



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

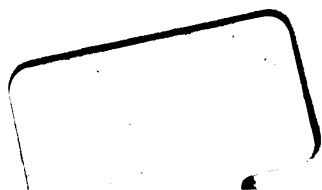
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



BNY  
Kearsex





7/6. Net

WAR RECORD  
OF THE  
YORK & LANCASTER REGIMENT  
1900-1902

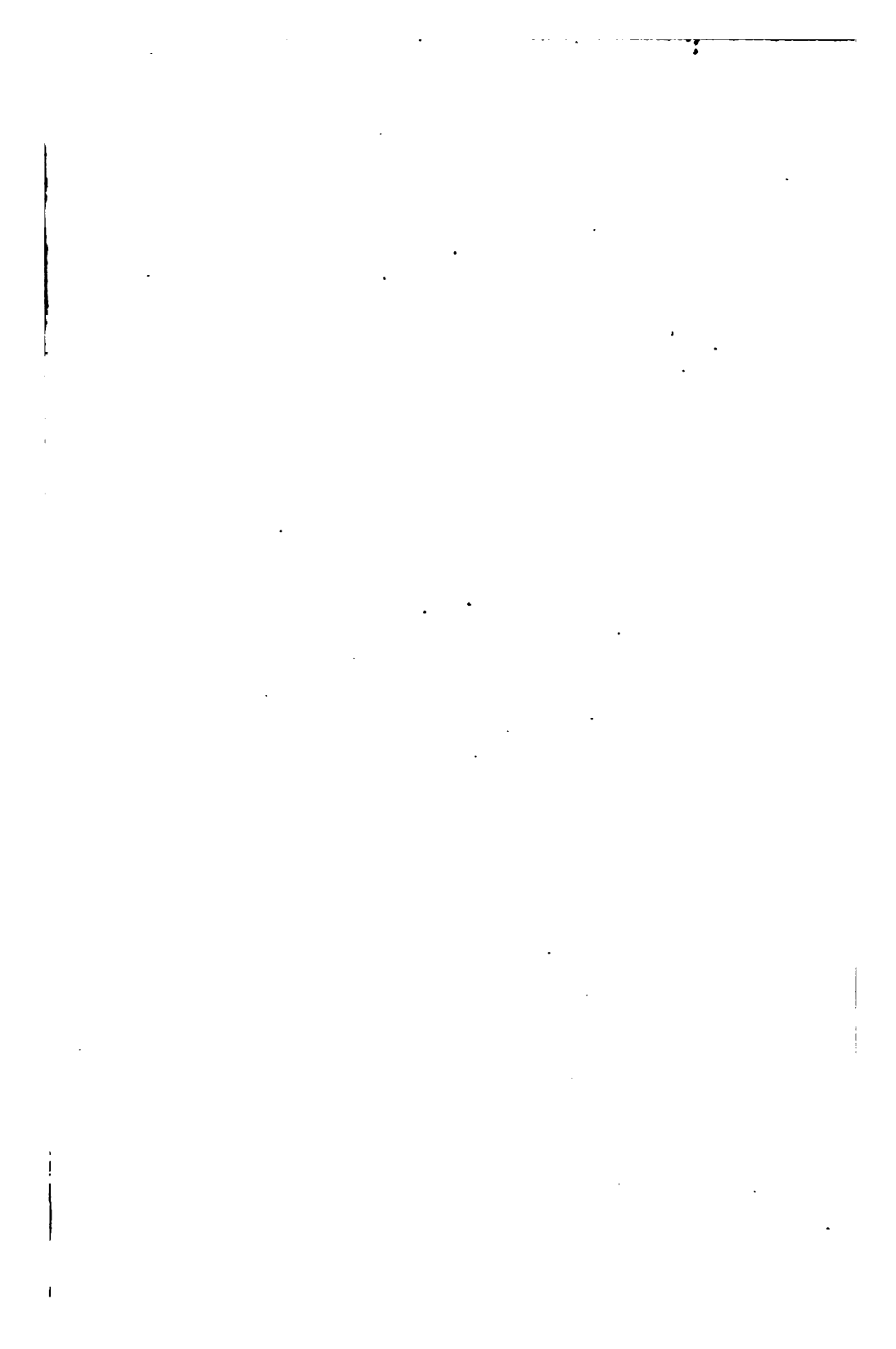
**GEORGE BELL AND SONS**

**LONDON: YORK-ST. COVENT GARDEN**

**CAMBRIDGE: DEIGHTON, BELL & CO.**

**NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.**

**BOMBAY: A. H. WHEELER & CO.**





COLONEL KIRKPATRICK, C.B.

*Frontispiece*

WAR RECORD  
OF THE  
LANCASTER REGIMENT

1900-1902

BY COL. G. H. G. G. G.

CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.

CLARENCE CLARKE

CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.

CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.

CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.

CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.

CLARENCE  
CLARENCE CLARKE D.S.O.  
CLARENCE



WAR RECORD  
OF THE  
YORK & LANCASTER REGIMENT  
1900-1902

FROM REGIMENTAL AND PRIVATE SOURCES

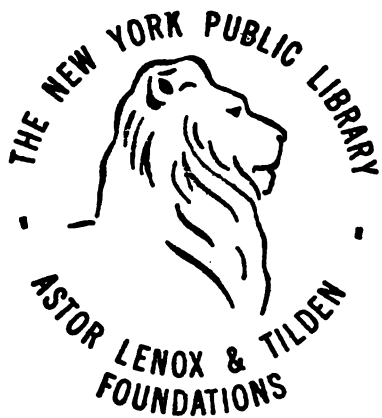
*Alexander Horace 9th* BY  
A. H. C. KEARSEY, D.S.O.

WITH A PREFACE BY  
COLONEL KIRKPATRICK, C.B.  
LATELY COMMANDING THE 1ST Y. & L. REGT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH PHOTOGRAPHS AND SKETCHES

BY H. R. HEADLAM AND E. COOKE

LONDON  
GEORGE BELL AND SONS  
1903



CHISWICK PRESS : CHARLES WHITTINGHAM AND CO.  
TOOKS COURT, CHANCERY LANE, LONDON.



## PREFACE

**A**LTHOUGH so many books have already been written on the war in South Africa, yet the vastness of the country and the huge scale on which operations were carried on render it probable that there may be something of new interest in these records written by Lieutenant Kearsey, 1st York and Lancaster Regiment, of the doings of the regiment, including the men of the 3rd Battalion and Volunteer Companies who were attached to us during the campaign of 1900 to 1902. The main object of the book is to preserve in narrative form an interesting memento of the work of the regiment in fighting, and trekking, and guarding railway and block-house lines, which fell to their share during those two and a half years ; and this being so I trust that readers will pardon any undue monotony, which is almost inevitable in writing an account of this sort, limited as it is to the work of one unit out of the whole army. In compiling this book Lieutenant Kearsey has had the advantage of referring to the regimental records kept during

the war by the Adjutants, Captain Gresson and Major Halford, and has the assent of Colonel Wallerstein and the officers of the regiment. Lieutenant Kearsey wishes me to thank on his behalf Captains Vickerman, Swanston, Heath and Isherwood, and Lieutenants Headlam and Palmer, for the interesting papers which they have each contributed; also Captain Marples and Lieutenant Longden for the use of their diaries; and to acknowledge his debt of gratitude to other friends who have helped him in bringing the book to completion.

J. W. KIRKPATRICK, COLONEL

*Lately Commanding*

*1st Battalion York and Lancaster Regiment.*

## CONTENTS

CHAP.	PAGE
I. "OFF" . . . . .	I
II. SPION KOP . . . . .	11
III. "AFTER MANY DAYS" . . . . .	32
IV. A BREATHING SPACE . . . . .	48
V. THE ADVANCE INTO THE TRANSVAAL	60
VI. GUARDING THE LINE AND THE AT- TACK ON UTRECHT . . . . .	83
VII. WAKKERSTROM HILL . . . . .	106
VIII. INGOGO POSTS . . . . .	115
IX. ELANDSBERG . . . . .	126
X. A TREK WITH A CONVOY . . . . .	143
XI. ITALIA AND OTHER MATTERS . . . . .	158
XII. COLUMNS AND BLOCKHOUSES . . . . .	176
XIII. INTELLIGENCE AND SIGNALLING . . . . .	192
XIV. WITH THE MOUNTED INFANTRY . . . . .	203
XV. PEACE . . . . .	228
APPENDICES . . . . .	239
INDEX . . . . .	275



# LIST OF PHOTOGRAPHIC ILLUSTRATIONS

	TO FACE PAGE
COLONEL KIRKPATRICK, C.B. . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
PREPARING BREAKFAST. ESTCOURT, JAN. } 6, 1900 . . . . .	7
BREAKFAST AT ESTCOURT . . . . .	
A TRIBUTARY OF THE BUFFALO RIVER . . . . .	66
A DONGA. HOUTS NEK . . . . .	90
SANGAR-BUILDING: WAKKERSTROM } TRENCH-DIGGING . . . . .	109
THE MEER-CAT . . . . .	
GETTING OUR LETTERS } . . . . .	124
CONVOY WORK. AN ENFORCED HALT . . . . .	128
A BOER FAMILY AT HOME . . . . .	161
REFUGEE CAMP: VOLKSRUST . . . . .	163
A KAFFIR WEDDING GROUP . . . . .	168
MATERIALS FOR BLOCKHOUSE ON A WAGON } FINISHING A BLOCKHOUSE . . . . .	176
BOTHA'S PASS: AN ARMoured WAGON . . . . .	184
LIEUT.-COLONEL WALLERSTEIN . . . . .	190
SENDING A HELIO MESSAGE } SCOUTS AT AIMING DRILL . . . . .	200
DISINTERRING THE RIFLE OF A SURRENDERED BOER . . . . .	233
A MID-DAY HALT: DE WET'S FARM . . . . .	235

## LIST OF SKETCHES IN THE TEXT<sup>1</sup>

	PAGE
ON BOARD THE MAJESTIC . . . . .	3
AT ST. VINCENT . . . . .	5
OFFICERS' MESS TENT. (Lieut. Headlam) . . . . .	33
END OF MAIN STREET, LADYSMITH . . . . .	45
OFFICERS' DUG-OUT. (Lieut. Headlam) . . . . .	58
A BROKEN CULVERT . . . . .	64
DE WET'S FARM . . . . .	70
WATCHING THE GRASS FIRE . . . . .	74
BEFORE AND AFTER. (Lieut. Headlam) . . . . .	82
MULE AMBULANCE WAGON . . . . .	84
PLAN OF UTRECHT. (Lieut. Headlam) . . . . .	100
A FIELD OVEN . . . . .	110
BIVOUAC: WAKKERSTROM HILL . . . . .	178
ONE OF THE FIRST BLOCKHOUSES . . . . .	181
WASHING DAY, INSIDE KLIP RIVER FORT . . . . .	185
BRIDGE OVER THE KLIP RIVER . . . . .	189
MAP OF BLOCKHOUSE LINE. (Lieut. Kearsey)	<i>End</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Where not otherwise stated the sketches have been made from photographs, by Miss Ethel Cooke.*

# WAR RECORD

## OF THE

### YORK & LANCASTER REGIMENT

#### CHAPTER I

"OFF"

IT was in the beginning of the dark days of 1899 that the 1st Battalion of the York and Lancaster, then stationed at York, received orders to form part of the Fifth Division which was going out to reinforce the army in Natal.

Things were not going smoothly in South Africa. "The dreadful old lady," as some one christened Ladysmith, was in trouble, and the call for more troops had begun—that call which was to echo so monotonously through many weary months of the next two and a half years.

The York and Lancaster Regiment, which dates back as far as 1756, consists now of two battalions originally the 65th Foot and the 84th Foot. Its badges are the royal tiger, superscribed "India," and the Union Rose; and it is entitled to bear on its colours the words Nive, Peninsula, Arabia, Lucknow, New Zea-

Lancashire  
Brigade

land, Egypt (1882-1884), and Tel-el-Kebir, and in days to come there will be some South African names remembered with equal pride.

The Fifth Division of the South African Field Force under Sir Charles Warren included the brigade which was originally the 9th, but was changed to the 11th when we got out. It was commanded by General Woodgate, and consisted of 2nd King's Own (Royal Lancaster Regiment), 2nd Lancashire Fusiliers, 1st South Lancashires, 1st York and Lancaster, and was called the Lancashire Brigade, though the men of the York and Lancaster are for the most part Yorkshiremen recruited from Sheffield and Pontefract, where the men work in the steel trade and in the mines.

On Friday, December 1st, 1899, a farewell service was held in York Minster for the regiment, which next day was inspected in khaki by the General. His parting words were a prediction that the war would be over before we reached South Africa—words not destined to be fulfilled, although they expressed the then prevailing idea.

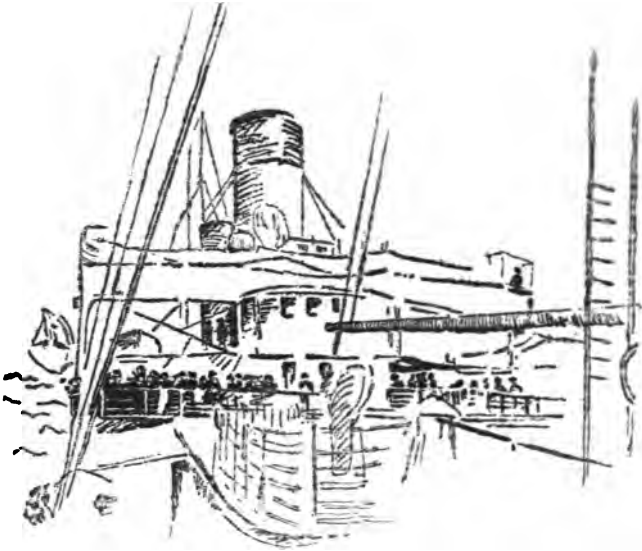
Twice the departure was delayed, and most trying it was for officers and men to have everything packed up for nearly three weeks. We were all ready and impatient to be off, and doubtful after hearing the foregoing prognostication lest the war should end before we could share



in it. Such fears sound strange now, but those were early days, and the Boers then an unknown and unappreciated quantity.

Start, Dec.  
13, 1899.

Finally, on Wednesday, December 13th, we sailed from Liverpool in the ss. Majestic, a fine ship running on an average more than



ON BOARD THE MAJESTIC.

twenty knots an hour. The weather gave us a bitterly cold send-off, which, however, did not daunt the many friends who collected to wish us God-speed, nor did it demoralize the men, who behaved exceptionally well.

The routine on board ship was in no way unusual. A daily parade for an hour, when

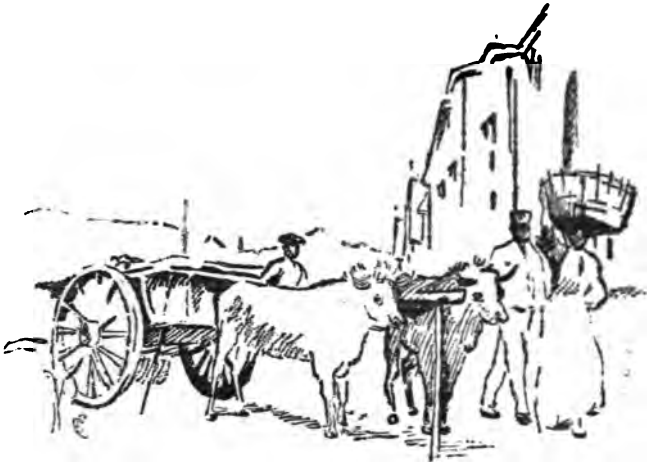
On board. officers and men did gymnastics together, kept all fit. After dinner, beyond an occasional fire alarm or shooting practice, there was nothing to do except for the officer of the day or of the watch—the latter being on duty eight out of the twenty-four hours.

Meantime, while the *Majestic* sailed from Liverpool to Durban, events had been happening in South Africa which were more reassuring to the Boers than to us. Since the war began our troops had met with three reverses: one at Stormberg to our central army guarding the line into the Free State; one at Magersfontein to our western army on its way to relieve Kimberley (a rumour of this had reached us at Liverpool before starting); and one at Colenso to our eastern army in its search for the key to Ladysmith. Truly a dismal tale for us to hear upon reaching St. Vincent, where we met the ss. *Britannic* homeward bound with sick and wounded.

St. Vincent, one of a group of the Cape Verde islands, is of a dull red, standing up very sharply out of the sea, which, being of an intense blue, gives a fine contrast of colour. No vegetation but scrub seems to thrive, nor does cultivation seem to be attempted anywhere except in the English colony of the island. The women do most of the fetching and carrying, the men being content to watch them and

lounge and smoke. The island is rather out of the direct route to the Cape, but had to be used as a coaling station owing to the other islands being overtaxed by the unusual traffic. Coaling here delayed the *Majestic* fourteen hours, during which time black dust spread its mantle over everything. The short stay here was marked

St. Vincent.



AT ST. VINCENT.

by our first casualty, one of the men being injured during the coaling.

Upon leaving St. Vincent inoculation against enteric fever began; this was done by Major J. Moir, the Principal Medical Officer on board. The effects are somewhat severe for at least a day, and the side where the injection is made becomes very stiff and sore. The officers were inoculated first in order to encourage the men,

Durban. but unluckily it had a reverse effect, since many when they saw the result refused to be done. One man was heard to say he would not mind being inoculated against Boer bullets, but he would risk enteric.

Christmas Day was spent on board ship. The band played, and the men had a smoking concert.

Durban was reached on Monday, January 1st, 1900. Owing to the *Majestic* being too big to cross the harbour bar, the disembarkation could not be completed until the following Wednesday, as everything had to be taken off in lighters and tugged ashore, thus delaying matters considerably.

The companies on landing entrained for a long run of thirteen hours to Estcourt. We were struck by the Natal railway, which is a triumph of engineering skill, winding its way up the steep mountains of the garden colony. At all the stopping-places *en route* people were waiting with welcome gifts of tea, fruit, and cigarettes.

Sir Charles Warren and our Brigade Major, Captain Vertue, met the troops at Estcourt station early on Thursday morning, and welcomed us as being the last regiment needed to complete the division.

Here at Estcourt, while the transport was put into working order, five days were spent in camp





**PREPARING BREAKFAST**

Estcourt, 6th January, 1900



**BREAKFAST AT ESTCOURT**

Our first camp in S. Africa

*To face p. 7*

practising scouting, field days, etc., as well as the new scheme of attack in extended order, the folly of advancing in close formation having been sorrowfully learned at Colenso. Estcourt.

We could distinctly hear the guns of Ladysmith, and the bombardment of January 6th. And yet it was difficult to imagine ourselves so near the enemy. An extract from an officer's private letter says of this time: "We go on quietly doing field days, etc., and one feels exactly as if one were on manœuvres on the Sussex Downs. The country here is like that, very open. The weather has been lovely, very bright sun with a cool breeze."

On Thursday, 9th, the 11th Brigade moved off, and General Buller's second attempt to relieve Ladysmith had begun. Five companies of our regiment were baggage-guard and three companies rearguard to the brigade.

That first day's march was a fair sample of what lay before us in the future. The heavy rains of the evening before made marching along slippery roads no light task, while the wagons were delayed some hours in crossing the swollen spruits. It was a long day too, tents being struck at half-past three in the morning, and not pitched until nine in the evening, when Frere was reached. We were under orders to move off at 12 p.m. on the following day, and all was packed and ready by the stated time; but we

## 8 YORK AND LANCASTER REGIMENT

Frere. did not start until the evening, and so were left to enjoy the full force of the broiling South African sun without any shade or covering till the clouds of night brought a welcome relief. Then the march began, and with it the rain, which came down in sheets. This added greatly to the difficulties of marching, as the ground became inches deep in mud and very slippery; therefore in spite of the greatest care the men in the rear had some difficulty in keeping up. "Ware Hoil! Hoil!"<sup>1</sup> was a constant cry, and the men kept jumping aside to avoid the little traps and holes which the meercats and ant-bears had dug; dongas and spruits, unseen in the pitchy darkness of the night, added to the difficulties of the march, and in spite of extreme care frequent falls could not be avoided. A spruit ordinarily shallow, but now swollen knee-deep, completed the drenching begun by the rain, especially for those who were unfortunate enough not to keep to the ford. A staff officer kindly pointed it out to them by means of a lantern, which he held on the other side of the spruit. Unluckily most of them mistook his directions, and the short ones paid for this by complete immersion.

A halt was made at 2 a.m., when the men lay down on the side of the road and slept, in spite of the falling rain, the sodden ground, and the

<sup>1</sup> Yorkshire pronunciation of "Hole."



noise of the ox and mule wagons passing within a few feet of them. March to Springfield.

The next ten days before Warren's turning movement began were spent in marching and getting into position. Rain, heat and cold, scanty covering, heavy loads, wet clothes—all these and more were experienced. In General Buller's dispatch after Spion Kop he thus mentions the difficulties encountered by the division after leaving Frere: "Torrents of rain fell on the 9th which filled all the spruits, and indeed rendered many of them impassable for many hours. To forward supplies alone took 650 ox wagons, and as in the sixteen miles from Frere to Springfield there were three places at which all the wagons had to be double-spanned, and some required three spans, some idea may be formed of the difficulties; but these were all successfully overcome by the willing labour of the troops."

No wonder everyone rejoiced in the quiet Saturday which was spent at Springfield. Here we got our tents again, which we had not seen since leaving Frere, and we were able to bathe and do some much-needed washing in the Little Tugela, which had been crossed two days previously near Pretorius' farm. That and the next day, Sunday, January 14th, spent in camp, were a welcome though short breathing-space before the fiery ordeal when the great

Springfield. struggle for the line of hills commanding Ladysmith was to commence once more. Our men were willing to throw themselves again and again on the fortresses which the Boers had built for protection and defence along the heights ; they were ready openly to face the enemy with a doggedness only equalled by his own, and with the additional handicap of having to wrest an advantage from them in the stern struggle for Ladysmith. It was a critical time, and yet no one in the British army thought it so ; all were confident in their leaders and in themselves, and positive that they could turn the tables, and wipe Magersfontein and Colenso off the slate. All were eager and longing to push on to reach their beleaguered comrades who, in spite of sickness and short rations, were so gallantly and uncomplainingly holding the town, and keeping at bay a Boer army of 15,000 men, in a position which commanded Ladysmith at every point.

## CHAPTER II

### SPION KOP

**A**LTHOUGH the story of Spion Kop has been often told, it is well to recapitulate one or two points in order to follow the movements of the York and Lancaster, with whom this record is concerned.

General Buller's first advance had been an attempt to force the Boers' centre, which had ended unfortunately, and but for the gunners' gallantly, perhaps precipitately, advancing their guns to within 1,200 yards of the Boer position, might have ended still more fatally. This gallant action, however, frightened the fire out of the Boers, and caused them to disclose their position. The Boers have since said that they had not intended to do so until the whole British army had advanced far enough to allow the Boer horsemen to get round in rear of our army. Our second attempt was directed towards outflanking their right and working round to the plain east of Spion Kop, without actually attacking Spion Kop itself. Unfortunately subsequent events made it necessary to

Springfield. take that peak, as Sir Charles Warren explained in his dispatch, for the purpose of getting the wagons through by the road leading past Fair View, the way selected for the venture by Acton Homes having been rejected as too long.

The real crossing of the Tugela was to be made at Tritchard's Drift by the main body under Warren, whilst Coke's and Lyttleton's Brigades were to engage the Boers' attention by attacking at Potgieter's Drift.

Men cannot work without eating, and the problem of feeding our vast army was the cause of many disastrous delays. It seems to have been one cause at least for the 11th Brigade being kept three days at Springfield after crossing the Little Tugela. The third day there we spent marching under a broiling sun a long distance out from camp, and back again.

Springfield was finally left on Tuesday, January 16th, at 4 p.m., and a ten hours' march brought us at 2 o'clock on the following morning to Ennersdale, a spot south of the Tugela, where the regiments were drawn up in lines, the South Lancashires being first, then the Lancashire Fusiliers, and behind them the York and Lancaster. The knowledge that the long night march had been a great success helped to counteract the hardships of a four hours' halt in the wet and cold, without either greatcoats or blankets.

Our guns started shelling the opposite banks of the river early on the morning of the 17th, and under cover of their fire the troops crossed the Tugela in boats and pontoons at Tritchard's Drift, a masterly movement which was carried out with the loss of only one man, a private in the Devons.

Tugela  
crossed,  
Jan. 17.

The night of the 17th was passed at Spearman's Hill, an important position commanding Potgieter's Drift, which last had been seized by the mounted troops six days previously. We remained on the kopjes we had taken, and could see the Boers digging trenches and fortifying the hills which we knew we should have to cross when the advance for which we were so eagerly hoping was really begun. All next day four companies were on outposts lining the heights commanding the river.

On January 19th the battalion moved off to the left, and one short sentence in the regimental record for that day needs no comment: "Fearfully hot day, nothing to eat; rum and biscuits served out at 8 a.m." Our bivouac that night was below the heights called Venter's Spruit Hills, close to Coventry's farm.

Now began those six long days and nights of storm and stress, which were destined to end only in bitter disappointment and dreary casualty lists.

On the first day at Venter's Spruit, January

Venter's  
Spruit.

20th, a large share of the losses and the glory fell upon the Lancashire Fusiliers and the York and Lancaster Regiment. Those two regiments were attached to Hart's Brigade, of which they formed the first line, with orders to seize three spurs of the hills.

All day long we worked and fought under a hot shell and rifle fire without food or water, only too thankful when we were actively fighting, and so could forget to some extent hunger and thirst, the heat of the rocks below, and the blazing sun above.

The ground for which we were struggling might be represented by a huge open hand, with the mass of Spion Kop as the thumb and the main Boer position as the wrist. Our present concern was with the spurs which formed the third and fourth fingers—long ridges of rough ground with deep valleys running up between them, and all converging on to the plain which sloped up to the enemy's position. The spur on our extreme left was being attacked by the Devons and the West Yorks, and two of our companies (A under Captain Cobbold, B under Captain Walshe) were ordered to move to our left and attack the spur between them and us.

The remainder of the regiment moved up on to the end of No. 3 spur, where they waited under fire until 2 p.m., when they got the order to advance. E Company, under Major Scholes,

led the way, succeeded by the remaining companies in attack formation. The advance, however, was very gradual, as the front was not sufficiently wide to admit of a proper extension.

Venter's  
Spruit.

Our first line got under cover about 1,000 yards from the enemy, when they were ordered to lie down and fire at the skyline in hopes of annoying the Boers behind the hill. Firing at an invisible enemy seemed tame work to men fretting their hearts out to break a way through the obstacles intervening between them and the weary watchers in Ladysmith, but the request for permission to charge was met by an order to advance no further. The second line suffered severely, as they were packed six deep in places, on the crest of a kopje from 1,200 to 1,300 yards distant from the Boers.

The men bivouacked that night where they had fought, an issue of rum being served out to do duty for both food and drink. Sir C. Warren ends his account of that day by saying: "After fighting for twelve hours we were in possession of the whole part of the hills, but found a strongly intrenched line on the comparatively flat country before us"—a somewhat formidable "but."

Our regiment lost that day ten killed and seventy-three wounded, including two officers, Second Lieutenant H. W. Duckworth and another lieutenant; figures so simple to write,

Venter's  
Spruit.

but so full of meaning to those whom they concerned. Only one man was taken prisoner, and he died in Pretoria about a fortnight later.

The following is taken from a personal account sent home at the time. "We were up and under arms at 2.30 a.m. on Saturday, 20th Jan., 1900, and moved off at 6 a.m., and there we waited. Every minute it was getting hotter, and I think that we felt the heat more on that day than on any other—it was grilling. The guns started shelling the Boer trenches very early, but without any apparent effect that we could see, for there were no Boers moving about. They had not wasted their time during the past three days, and had evidently made themselves bomb-proof shelters, behind which they were now safely resting, not disclosing their position till it became necessary for them to hold their trenches against the attacking infantry. At 11 a.m. we were told to advance, an order which we were thankful to obey, as lying inactive in the sun against the burning rocks was trying in the extreme. Added to which thirst was another trial which had to be endured, as we had had no breakfast and only bad water was obtainable, and that from a distance. I had to start the attack with half a company, and advanced over the kopjes towards a Boer position. As soon as we were visible on the skyline we drew a heavy crossfire from the Boers on the hills on



either side; so our line extended out and doubled forward, and each time we got on to the crest of the kopje we increased our pace, which was kept up while descending the slope, where we were especially a target for the Boer fire. We were able to get cover and regain our breath on ascending the kopjes. We got into position about 1 p.m., having had only two casualties, and here we built up fortifications round the kopje while waiting for reinforcements, and when these came we advanced to the kopje beyond and started to fortify that. This kopje then became very crowded, and it seemed to afford but slender cover from the enemy, who, attracted by the bigger target, now gave it their special attention. We did long to be able to copy the enemy's tactics of remaining invisible, as we saw no sign of them, though the effect of their fire was very telling. More men were still being sent forward to make a bigger mark, as only a few men could line the edge of the kopje to reply to the Boers' fire; and though we could not see them it was good to be able to fire at the hills, which the guns were shelling and where we hoped the Boers were lurking. The men consoled themselves by saying to each other, in broad Yorkshire, 'Whar ours is good as theirs,' which meant they considered our guns a match for the Boers. At last the word came to push on, and we left our final place of cover and advanced

Venter's  
Spruit.

Experiences  
of the  
wounded.

towards the Boers' main position across an open plain where we had no place of refuge, and soon found that the Boer trenches were too strongly held for a small party to advance against them with any chance of success, and before we had gone 800 yards too many had been wounded to make a further advance possible, so we had to wait there for reinforcements. But evidently the plans of campaign were altered, as our expected help never came on and the rest of the regiment moved off to the west, and the kopjes which we had left were occupied by men of the Border Regiment ; so we remained in the open between the two fires. The volleys of our men sounded as if their bullets were coming very close to us, and the Boers, when not employed in answering, filled in their spare time in trying to finish us off. Most of us were lying out wounded, and those who had escaped were occupied in looking after their disabled comrades. The sun, which had burnt us all the morning, was obscured by clouds during the afternoon and sharp showers ensued. At night it was very cold, especially so for those who could not move, and who were weak from loss of blood."

Next day the wounded were moved to Springfield, a trying journey of about seven hours, along roads that were not roads, and in an ambulance wagon without springs, so that the jolting caused the wounds to open afresh. The

second day was even worse, since they had a thirteen hours' journey by wagon to Frere. One more day's travelling, this time by rail, brought them to Mooi River Hospital, where going to bed once more between sheets and getting a drink of milk were much appreciated luxuries. January 21.

On Sunday, 21st, the regiment took up a position in the second line along the head of a narrow valley, about 1,500 to 2,500 yards from the enemy's position. The Boers were very active on our left, and brought two more big guns into action, getting the range almost immediately, and wounding two men with their first shell. Considering that these two guns enfiladed us, that shells kept dropping amongst our men who were lying down in lines not ten yards apart, and that most of the shrapnel burst successfully, ten men wounded was a small casualty list for the regiment that day. No further advance was made on the Sunday, and the men bivouacked in the valley close behind the firing line.

On Monday the regiment took its turn in the firing line, and a continuous fire was kept up all day at the Boers' position. One of the enemy's pom-poms was especially annoying, being principally aggressive during the time the firing line was relieved, so the plan of *one man at a time being relieved* was adopted. These tactics later became universal.

Four howitzers, for which Warren telegraphed

In reserve. to Potgieter's, arrived that morning, but seemed quite inadequate to cope with the enemy's guns, and little progress was made. One officer (Lieutenant Halford) and seven men wounded, two of whom subsequently died, summed up the regiment's casualties for that day.

During the night we were warned that there would be firing on the right, as the momentous decision had been made to attack Spion Kop. This warning, however, proved a premature one, the assault being postponed till the following night, for want of sufficient reconnaissance.

Tuesday, January 23rd, was spent by the battalion in reserve, in a very exposed position, where all attempts to construct shelters failed, owing to the lack of tools and the nature of the ground. The firing line being perched on the edge of an almost precipitous hill, their supports had to be massed close behind the firing line, and although these supports were virtually not in action, they were exposed to the enemy's shells, and ten casualties occurred.

The night was very wet, and under cover of the darkness General Woodgate's attacking column seized one-half of the end plateau of Spion Kop ridge. The York and Lancaster were still left in reserve under General Hart in the valley, but in the small hours of Wednesday morning they opened a heavy fire in order to hold the Boer right during our attack on Spion

Kop. At the end of two and a half hours' firing they were relieved by the Dublin Fusiliers, when they moved into a more sheltered place behind a spur of the hill, whence, as the mist cleared off, the attack on Spion Kop could be seen developing, whilst the Boer shells were dropping all over the hill. Spion Kop.

Notwithstanding being in reserve, the regiment was not altogether out of range of the enemy's shells, and sustained further casualties that day, one shell alone accounting for five men. Our total losses were one officer (Captain G. H. Armstrong) and eight men wounded, five of the latter dying of their wounds.

On the morning of Thursday, 25th, unwelcome rumours reached those anxious onlookers—reports of the death of Captain Vertue, the Brigade Major, of the grievous wounding of General Woodgate; grim disheartening tales of the slaughter on Spion Kop, and of a midnight evacuation of the hardly won position. Such tidings of disaster and defeat were not easily credited by men who had been cheerfully enduring an almost continuous exposure for four days to shell and rifle fire, buoyed up by the thought of eventually winning through to Ladysmith. The idea of once more turning back from the desired goal was repugnant to them; they could, however, see for themselves that the transport, which had been parked some miles to

Recrossing  
the Tugela.

the rear, was on the move towards the pontoon at Tritchard's Drift, and once the Commander-in-Chief's decision to retreat became known, they had to retire. Our worst fears were realized, and the goal we were aiming at had still to be attained.

The men were kept busy all Thursday making roads along the sides of the hills leading down to Coventry's Farm, where we had bivouacked only six days previously, on the eve of Venter's Spruit engagement. After a cold and sleepless night, we relieved the Border Regiment in the firing line, and kept up a continuous and heavy fire all through Friday, 26th. Towards evening a cold drizzle and a biting wind came on, and so intense was the cold that many of the men suffered from a kind of ague.

Although unmolested by the Boers, the withdrawal of the ox wagons and mule transport across the Tugela had been going on under great difficulties for two days and a night. The drift was dangerous in the dark, and therefore useless for about seven hours; but the pontoon bridge was used day and night. When all the men were over, the chesses<sup>1</sup> of the bridge were so worn by the enormous traffic they could hardly have lasted another half-hour.

The retirement, which was made during the night of the 26th, was delayed more than an

<sup>1</sup> Roadway planks.

hour by heavy firing from the Boers on our right, who apparently mistook our movement for a surprise night attack. Not until the last transport had safely passed across was the bridge free for the men. Then silently, and in good order, the regiment evacuated the position which had been held at such an enormous sacrifice for six days and nights.

Recrossing  
the Tugela.

The weary and disappointed troops had a terrible march of nearly five hours before reaching the pontoon, the paths and tracks leading to it being rough and muddy, added to which the pitch-dark night made it very difficult to keep in touch with the guides, and to prevent the companies from getting separated. Before daylight on Saturday, January 27th, the last party had crossed once more to the south side of the fateful Tugela, where they bivouacked for several hours.

General Buller sums up the Spion Kop failure in these few words: "Thus ended an expedition which I think should have succeeded."

The will was there among the troops; they were fretting to go forward, and cheerfully do their best at the hardest task which they might be asked to accomplish. Their hearts were set on relieving the beleaguered town, which was now in a deplorable condition. With a death rate of eight to ten a day, hospital stores exhausted, half-rations of horse-flesh and little else to eat,

Vaal Krantz. the endurance of the besieged must have been sorely tried, when the cessation of firing told them that the relief party had once more fallen back. But they were doomed to yet another disappointment before the day of their deliverance was to dawn.

Having failed to reach the comparatively flat country beyond Spion Kop, General Buller's next objective was the open plain beyond the Vaal Krantz ridge. From Spearman's Camp, January 29th, he communicated this scheme to Lord Roberts: "My plan for next trial to relieve Ladysmith is to turn the Spion Kop position by the east, crossing the Tugela three times, and using a new drift<sup>1</sup> just discovered, which makes all the difference by enabling me to reach a position hitherto considered inaccessible." This he trusted was the long-sought key to Ladysmith, but unhappily it was not destined to open the door.

The York and Lancaster Regiment were stationed after Spion Kop about eight miles from the Tugela at Hatting's Farm, where they were in Rest Camp for a few days. Here they were joined by a draft from England, under Lieutenant Vaughan, who was rejoining from hospital, having been wounded at Magersfontein whilst attached to the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders.

<sup>1</sup> Munger's Drift.



In order to mask the assault on Vaal Krantz, Vaal Krantz. a feigned attack was to be made on Brakfontein, a ridge running from Spion Kop on the west to Vaal Krantz on the east, and over which the road to Ladysmith passed. This demonstration was to fall to the lot of the Lancashire Brigade under General Wynne, who had taken over the command a few days after General Woodgate was mortally wounded. These days in camp were spent in drill and manœuvre to steady the drafts. The brigade were addressed by General Buller and by General Sir Charles Warren, who both complimented the regiments on the magnificent bravery they had displayed in the last week's fighting. Two of the regiments—the Lancashire Fusiliers and the Royal Lancasters—were decimated, and our Brigadier himself, General Woodgate, was dying in hospital at Mooi river.

The battalion moved off from Hatting's Farm in the early hours of Saturday, February 3rd. We crossed the Tugela at Potgieter's Drift at 11.30 a.m. The road down to the river was very steep, and from the top of the hill, the sides of which were covered with mimosa scrub, aloes, etc., a magnificent view of the scene of the next few days' fighting was obtained. The plain stretched before us, a great amphitheatre, with Spion Kop on our left; in front of us Brakfontein and Vaal Krantz, and to our right the wooded

**Vaal Krantz.** slopes of Swartz Kop and Mount Alice. On crossing the river the regiment took up a position on three kopjes in relief of the King's Royal Rifles, who had been there since the last advance. Three companies were on outposts, and the remainder in support. As the position was very cramped, that day and the next, a very hot one, were passed very irksomely.

On the Sunday, Lieutenant Gresson, who had gone out to South Africa on special service, rejoined us to take over the adjutancy from Lieutenant Halford. Lieutenants Wedgwood and Coke returned from sick leave on February 6th.

Next day the third attempt to relieve Lady-smith began.

The men were up and off very early on Monday morning. The York and Lancaster Regiment and South Lancashires formed first line; our left was on Kidney Kopje, and our right on the South Lancashire Regiment on Thornhill Farm, supported by the Royal Lancaster Regiment. The Lancashire Fusiliers did not move out, but were held in reserve at the three kopjes from which we had advanced; our advance being covered by a brisk fire from our guns. Closer and closer to the Boer position we advanced, but not a sign of life was visible along the whole length of the threatened ridge, nothing to show that death was lurking there.

---

When within 1,500 yards of the enemy's position, the order was given to lie down and do nothing, and on no account to fire unless at a good target, a thing not very likely to occur, since acting as targets for their opponents is what the Boers have always proved so clever at avoiding. We waited there for three hours, lying in the grass while our guns bombarded the hill before us, apparently searching every crevice with their lyddite shells. Vaal Krantz.

Still that silence on the ridge, and still no sign of the enemy until close on midday. Then the Boer guns spoke. But so well shielded and concealed were they that our guns were quite unable to locate or silence them, whereas the enemy's gunners quickly got the range of our exposed batteries, and directed a perfect storm of fire against them. A medical officer<sup>1</sup> who was looking on says: "So sudden and so furious was this outburst of shot and shell, that the whole plain was obscured by smoke and dust, and from a spectacular point of view it seemed as if Wynne's brigade was going to be wiped out."

But our gunners worked on magnificently, undeterred by shot and shell. This awful display of artillery fire lasted two and a half hours, at the end of which time the feint attack having done all that it was intended to do, General

<sup>1</sup> Lieut. Blake-Knox, "With the Natal Army."

Vaal Krantz.

Wynne gave the order to retire. As the men of our front line rose to carry out this order, the Boers for the first time that day showed themselves, thinking, no doubt, that our retreat meant we had lost the day. But in reality we had accomplished our object; the feint had been successful, and we had shown where the Boer guns were, besides keeping the Boers occupied whilst the battle on our right was won.

Calmly and steadily, never quickening their pace, the men withdrew from that circle of fire. Two plucky fellows, Privates Stafford and Pitchfork, stopped behind to help a wounded comrade, Private Shaw, whom they brought in safely under a hot fire. Colour-Sergeant Hulley (now Sergeant-Major of the regiment) was wounded in the leg. A shell from a pom-pom hit and killed another man, Private Emery, but the total losses were surprisingly small, mainly owing to the men being well extended. One killed and twenty-two wounded, two of whom died of their wounds, comprised the York and Lancaster casualties in the Brakfontein feint attack, an engagement which "Linesman" describes as "the finest sight of the war, perhaps of any war."

The battalion fell back on three kopjes on the north side of the Tugela, where they remained and furnished outposts for the remainder of that day and on the following day and night.

A few shells came their way from the engagement on their right, where the main attack was made on Tuesday, 6th, but no casualties occurred.

Failure of  
Vaal Krantz.

Following on the cheering report that Vaal Krantz had been successfully seized and held by our men came the disappointing tidings that it was to be evacuated. The hill had proved smaller than had been anticipated: our guns could not be got up on to its narrow ridge to silence the Boer guns, which were rendering the position untenable, and in short the Ladysmith door was not to be opened by the Vaal Krantz key.

Vaal Krantz was not evacuated until the night of February 7th, nor did we know of the evacuation until very early on the 8th, when orders for retirement came. An officer writes of this time as follows: "The spectacle from the kopjes was a magnificent one. On every hill a Boer gun was directed on the ridge of Vaal Krantz—puffs of smoke, which became more conspicuous as dusk advanced, marking each shell's dispatch. We watched the Vaal Krantz ridge being riddled with shells; we watched our own field battery working in a perfect hurricane of fire; and when our naval gun located and exploded the Boer magazine on Mount Alice, a cheer went up from among us. It was a splendid evening, and the next morning the stars were shining brilliantly

Failure of  
Vaal Krantz.

when, at 3.30 a.m., we began to get our coats together preparatory to starting."

One company, under Major Scholes, was left behind to cover the retirement, but rejoined the regiment when it had once again made the now well-known crossing of the river at Potgieter's Drift. We bivouacked for the rest of that day on the slopes of Swartz Kop, and furnished an outpost along the bend of the Tugela.

From Swartz Kop we could see more of the main attack, which was being carried on by General Hildyard's brigade. When, after a long day of waiting, we advanced to the outpost line and took up our positions for the night, we believed that an advance was to be made on the morrow. Our disappointment therefore was great, when we found that the troops in front of us were being withdrawn. The regiment moved off at daybreak, and after a most trying, hot, dusty march up the steep slopes of Spearman's Hill, we encamped for two nights at One Tree Hill, from which we moved on to Springfield.

The next day, after our troops were withdrawn from Vaal Krantz, the whole force retired to Spearman's Camp. The Boers sent some parting shots from the heights of Doorn Kloof after the retreating foe. They found a point about two miles ahead where they pitched some shells just to show that the whole of that distance was within range of their guns, and that there was

no safety from their fire until that distant point was passed. But our men did not hasten their steps on that account; the retirement was effected in perfect order—no panic, no disorder, no hurry; the General had decided that a retreat was necessary and the men obeyed.

Failure of  
Vaal Krantz.

So the third attempt had failed, and still the distressful town must wait on for relief.

## CHAPTER III

### "AFTER MANY DAYS"

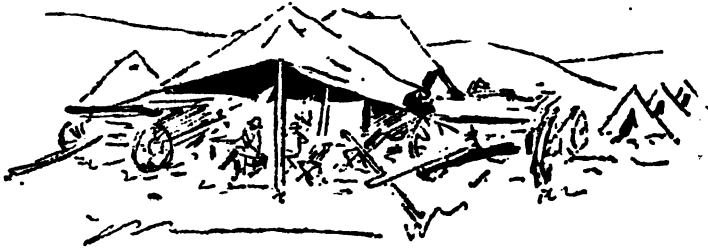
**I**T is easy to play a winning game, and nothing succeeds like success ; but to sustain defeat after defeat with courage and composure needs iron nerve and indomitable will. Looking back on those black days of the Natal Campaign, it seems little short of a miracle that the failure of three desperate attempts to relieve Ladysmith did not demoralize our troops. Few armies would have passed through such crushing experiences and maintained their discipline. Possibly the fact that ours did so was due to what "Linesman" calls "the system and composition of our anachronistic old army." Be that as it may, the men were still ardently longing to be led on to a fresh encounter with the mobile and hitherto impenetrable force contending with them for the ruin or rescue of one tormented town.

After the abandonment of Vaal Krantz the troops had one day at Spearman's for a short rest, which was a great boon—we used it in making ourselves and our rifles as clean as we



could in the interval. On Saturday, February 10th, the army marched to Springfield. Here a force under the command of Brigadier-General Burn-Murdoch was left behind; it consisted of a brigade of cavalry, two battalions of infantry, viz., York and Lancaster Regiment and Imperial Light Infantry, and two naval guns. The infantry brigade and guns were under Colonel Kirkpatrick. The main body proceeded to Chieveley to rest and recruit before the next

Advance on  
the right.



OFFICERS' MESS TENT.

advance, which was this time to be an attempt to outflank the Boers' left. The enemy's defences on that side were to the south of the Tugela, their principal position being Hlangwane Hill, and to the south and east of that important post were Hussar Hill, Green Hill, and Cingolo and Monte Cristo, the two last-named hills connected by a nek.

It was in order to guard the left flank of the army during the meditated attack on these hills that Burn-Murdoch's small force was left behind

Advance on  
the right.

at Springfield, where they found plenty to do in holding the bridge over the river, in outpost duty and intrenching. In one of the diaries kept at that time, some of the short entries are significant, such as: "Fresh mutton." "Good grub, bad water, which is very troublesome." "Fresh bread for breakfast." It is obvious that such things would not be chronicled if there were an abundance of them. "Trench-digging as usual" is an entry in another diary, and indeed the daily life consisted chiefly of trench-digging, with an occasional bathe in the river by way of relaxation. The weather was very trying on account of frequent and terrific thunderstorms, and on one occasion at least the camp was flooded out. The fact that the tents were not proof against such violent rains added to the discomfort.

Two days after their arrival at Springfield the cavalry outposts were fired on by some Boers, supposed to be a reconnaissance party under Louis Botha. It would be interesting to know if he was aware that on the same day General Buller was scanning the Boer strongholds from Hussar Hill. Whether the object of the Boer General was accomplished cannot be said, but our cavalry having been reinforced, the enemy were driven off, though not without loss on our side.

Orders were received on Tuesday, 20th, to

march from Springfield to Chieveley, whence two of our companies were sent on to Hlangwane, as escort to two 4.7 naval guns. On the 21st Burn-Murdoch's cavalry, with the exception of the 14th Hussars, moved off early to join the main force under General Buller. Later in the day the infantry brigade, with naval guns and 14th Hussars attached, moved off, under Colonel Kirkpatrick, as escort to a convoy of nearly 300 wagons. We halted that night near Potgieter's Farm; here the 14th Hussars were relieved by a squadron of Bethune's Mounted Infantry, and were sent on to join Burn-Murdoch. The convoy was escorted into Frere on the 22nd, and the infantry brigade and guns moved to Chieveley, where we were joined by the Border Regiment. We spent nearly a week here under command of Colonel Kirkpatrick. On the 26th the Border Regiment were sent on to join the main force, and the York and Lancaster Regiment followed early on the morning of the 27th. The remainder of Burn-Murdoch's force spent a week in camp, at the end of which time they moved off from Chieveley on their way to join the rest of the Lancashire Brigade. This was under the command of Colonel Kitchener, *vice* General Wynne, who had been wounded on the 22nd in the attack on Green Hill, thenceforth called Wynne's Hill.

Advance on  
the right.

Hlangwane.

In order to understand the position of affairs on our arrival at Hlangwane it is necessary to go back to the time when Burn-Murdoch's detachment was left behind at Springfield. The Boers had posted about half their force on the hills south of the Tugela, as they were fully aware that Hlangwane was the key to the position, and that while they held it any direct assault on Colenso must end as once before, in disaster to the attacking force. But they had so long been accustomed to our frontal attacks that they could not credit us with adopting any other tactics. It does not appear to have entered into the Boer General's calculations that, although the key to Colenso was Hlangwane, the key to Hlangwane was Cingolo on the east of the formidable line of hills, nor yet that possibly the British General would attempt a flank movement on that position, which was only weakly held by the enemy. Such, however, was the case. After two days' rest in camp at Chieveley the main force under General Buller were again hard at work attacking and outflanking the enemy.

By attacking and seizing Cingolo and Monte Cristo the post on Hlangwane was rendered untenable; the Boers retreated, leaving our troops in possession of Hlangwane, and by February 20th the Commander-in-Chief had established his headquarters in the deserted and half ruined village of Colenso.

At this point the original plan of continuing the flanking movement from Monte Cristo was abandoned for a frontal attack on Pieter's Hill, because the Boers were incorrectly reported to be so disheartened and demoralized that little further opposition was expected from them.

Accordingly next day, Wednesday, February 21st, a pontoon bridge was thrown across the river near Colenso, and the Tugela was crossed by our army for the third, but as it proved not for the last time. Then followed three days' heavy fighting, the chief result of which was to prove that the Boer position on Pieter's Hill was held by them too strongly for our direct assault to succeed. So the troops were once more unwillingly withdrawn over the Tugela, and once more the lesson was driven home of the futility of a frontal attack on a strong position, strongly held by brave men. Surely the fact that our men did not lose heart entirely, but that repeated disappointments only spurred them on to greater energy whenever they were given the chance, goes far to prove that there is still good stuff in the British Army.

Sunday, 25th, was agreed upon between the Generals as a partial armistice for the burial of the dead and removal of the wounded, some of whom had been lying out for two whole days. These tasks of humanity and mercy left little leisure for any Sabbath rest, but the cessation

Armistice,  
February 25,  
1900.

of active hostilities gave a curious effect of Sabbath stillness after the roar and rush of battle. It was on this day that the two companies took the guns to Hlangwane.

"Linesman," in his graphic way, has written of how Briton and Boer met that Sunday on the neutral ground dividing the two armies; of the mutual exchange of civilities in the midst of grim reminders of war; of how conversation was started and stimulated by a gift of tobacco to some of "the Queen's enemies," a gift which found its way more quickly to the heart of the Boer than any gift of food would have done; of how each side strove to outdo the other in extravagant protestations of delight in warfare, and a readiness to fight on for any number of years; and, above all, how Tommy with his unflinching sense of his own importance, and a desire to impress the enemy, adopted a melodramatic attitude, with his arms folded across his breast. All this and much more can be read as it was written by the unequalled pen of "an Eyewitness."

But an armistice cannot last for ever, and this one ended at 6 p.m., although the quiet of the evening was undisturbed by any firing until ten o'clock, when the roar of artillery and musketry fire recommenced. The serious repulse we had experienced in making a frontal attack necessitated a return to the first idea of

trying to work round on our extreme right and so turn the enemy's left. Facing Hlangwane, away there to the north of the Tugela, were three hills which must be ours before Ladysmith could be reached—three barriers between us and the desired goal, all heavily fortified and strongly held by the Boers. The centre one, Railway Hill, is usually called Pieter's Hill, from Pieter's railway station, which lies a little to the north of it; and it was from this hill, which was the contested point, that the long-drawn-out battle, beginning on the 21st and ending on the 27th, took its name. To the east of this hill lay Barton's Hill, to the west of it Hart's Hill, forming together a wellnigh impregnable rampart.

Final  
movement.

Before another attack on Pieter's ridge could be made the fatal river must be crossed again, and as the passage of Langewachte Spruit was commanded by strong Boer intrenchments, it was decided to use another passage that had been found by Colonel Sandbach, R.E., north of Hlangwane and below the Tugela cataract. Men, guns and baggage having all been brought back to the south side of the river, the pontoon bridge near Colenso was taken up on the night of the 26th, and relaid at the new site. Here it was that the York and Lancaster Regiment at the end of the five and a half hours' march from Chieveley, crossed at midday on

News of  
Paardeberg.

Tuesday, 27th, and bivouacked with the 11th Brigade at the foot of the high and precipitous hills which rise abruptly from the river's bank.

That day was the nineteenth anniversary of Majuba, and, before going into action, the troops were told by General Buller that Cronje had surrendered at Paardeberg—glorious news for that day and for our men about to engage in a crucial struggle.

After these inspiring tidings came the order to advance. To the Lancashire Brigade under Colonel Kitchener was given the task of assaulting the Boers' centre position on Railway Hill. The York and Lancaster started in support of the South Lancshires, but were afterwards in support of the Prince of Wales's Own (West Yorks). The regiment moved off by companies, the left half being under Lieut.-Colonel Kirkpatrick, the right half under Major Lou-sada.

Going in single file, along the edge of the river, under cover of a heavy artillery fire from our guns, a gradual ascent was made until the railway was nearly reached. Then came about 500 yards of almost open ground between us and the Boers, who were strongly intrenched on a small kopje, and here the first company came in for a very warm fire; but in face of that the kopje was carried with the bayonet. They were now almost opposite Pieter's Hill, and



immediately began to climb the heights. The shells directed at the West Yorks burst all around, and they were also raked by a sharp fire from a gully on their right. Still on they went, and in spite of a stubborn and gallant defence, the Boer position on Pieter's Hill was successfully stormed. Ten men of our regiment were wounded, two seriously. But the men knew that the hard-earned victory was worth the price paid for it; the Tugela river was really crossed this time, and the taking of Pieter's Hill practically decided the fate of Ladysmith. It was an important victory for us, and the York and Lancaster had taken their full share in it. It was a magnificent assault, and Conan Doyle's description of that charge up Pieter's Hill tempts one to a quotation: "It was the supreme instant of the Natal Campaign, as wave after wave, the long lines of infantry went shimmering up the hill. On the left the Lancasters, the Lancashire Fusiliers, the South Lancashires, and the York and Lancaster, with a burr of north country oaths, went racing for the summit."<sup>1</sup>

Pieter's Hill  
stormed.

That day the regimental Maxim gun won special praise for its work, and was the only regimental Maxim in action. It had been laboriously dragged by hand up a precipitous ascent by Private Koerner, who carried the gun

<sup>1</sup> "The Great Boer War."

Pieter's Hill  
stormed.

on his back, and burnt his neck and back bad' in so doing. It was used with splendid effect against the flying enemy, many of whom, when found next day, testified by their wounds to its efficiency. Sergeant J. Miller was mentioned in dispatches and was awarded the D.C.M. for his excellent work with this Maxim gun, which, coming into action on our right, helped to cover the advance.

General Buller's dispatch after Pieter's Hill says: "The 4th Brigade under General Norcott, and the 11th Brigade under Colonel Kitchener, the whole under General Warren, assailed the enemy's main position, which was magnificently carried by the South Lancashires about sunset."

Early in the engagement four companies of the York and Lancaster had been halted close to the railway, and two of them were eventually sent forward to take up a position just below the crest of Wynne's Hill. That night and all next day the regiment bivouacked on the slopes of the hills where they had fought, and all day long the task of succouring the wounded went on. Our battalion furnished outposts (four companies) on the night of the 27th and again on the night of the 28th, Lieut.-Colonel Kirkpatrick being in command of the outpost for the brigade.

On the evening of Wednesday, 28th, Lord

Dundonald with Natal Carbineers and a composite regiment rode into Ladysmith, and the siege was practically raised. No more disheartening turning back, no more weary crossing of the Tugela. The Boers' position had been forced at last, and they were even now retiring in hot haste, although how thoroughly they were routed we did not then know. The Boers have since confessed that, had we followed them up, they would have been at our mercy, as they were worn out and spiritless, and a few cavalry could have taken nearly all of them prisoners. So great was the panic they had no heart for further resistance, nor would they respond to the exhortations and sjamboks of their leaders. Telegraphing two days later from Ladysmith, General Buller says : " I find the defeat of the Boers is more complete than I had dared to anticipate. The whole district is completely clear of them."

Relief of  
Ladysmith.

Early on Thursday morning, March 1st, the battalion moved off with the brigade on its march to Ladysmith across the big plain south of Bulwana. Whilst halted near the railway they heard of the cavalry's entry into the town. The set, dogged faces relapsed into smiles, and vigorous cheers greeted this good news. Later came further news that General Buller himself was actually in Ladysmith. After that they gaily marched on until Davel's Spruit near

Relief of  
Ladysmith.

Nelthorpe was reached a little before noon. Here we halted, a few hundred yards in rear of the rest of the division.

Friday was passed in Rest Camp at Davel's Spruit, their last camp before Ladysmith. It was a night to be remembered, owing to the rain; but so weary were the men that, in default of dry ground, they laid down and slept in pools of water, which the constant rain was ever increasing. But all were cheered by the thought that the Boers were routed at last; only another month and the war will be over was the common cry.

Then on Saturday, March 3rd, came the formal entry. The battalion paraded early and moved off up the railway line to the outskirts of the town, where they formed up. Heading the march past Sir George White came the Dublin Fusiliers, specially attached for that day to the 11th Brigade; following them came the York and Lancaster Regiment with the rest of Sir Charles Warren's division and the other troops. It seemed hard for the rescuers to realize that this was indeed the town they had so long and so desperately tried to relieve, but the reality of it was brought home to them only too vividly on looking at the thin white faces of the worn-out defenders who lined the streets. Was it likely the rescuers could cheer in the face of so much misery; was it likely the rescued had

strength left to give vent to their enthusiasm, however much they might feel ?

Relief of  
Ladysmith.

And so, on through those woebegone ranks the relieving force marched at a quick pace ; on past the Town Hall, where Sir George White and his staff were stationed, past Tin Camp and Rifleman's Post, out and beyond to their camp north of Ladysmith, where for three days the York and Lancaster rested.



END OF MAIN STREET, LADYSMITH.

The men who had held out against such odds, and the men who had so doggedly persevered in the face of so many reverses, were alike reaping their reward. Ladysmith was relieved and Natal was saved.

On 22nd March, 1900, when Brigadier-General Kitchener gave over the command of the Lancashire Brigade, he paid the following tribute to their work :

“ Brigadier - General Kitchener desires to

Relief of  
Ladysmith.

place on record his appreciation of the gallant conduct of the Prince of Wales's Own (West Yorkshire Regiment), Royal Lancaster Regiment, the South Lancashire Regiment, and the York and Lancaster Regiment at the battle of Pieter's Hill. North countrymen may well be proud of the performances of their representatives in replacing the anniversary of Majuba by Ladysmith Day, a day that Yorkshiremen and men of Lancashire will honour for all time."

But great as was the task accomplished, the struggle was by no means over. We had entirely under-estimated our opponents, who, we were beginning to learn, were fine soldiers, full of resource, hardly ever giving us a point, and possessing the great advantage that each commando could act independently without constant reference to superior authority. They were self-controlled bodies, and their thorough knowledge of the country, as well as their isolated and independent life, fostered immense self-reliance in each man.

The Boers were formidable opponents not so much on account of their military training, but because their mode of life and upbringing made them fit to undergo and endure the hardships of war, and once roused they showed a relentless implacable spirit and a singleness of purpose which surprised all. Brave, hardy, strong and

cunning, good horsemen and good shots, this war was bringing out their strong qualities which in times of peace lay dormant and inactive. From earliest boyhood their games take the form of military manœuvres; a rifle and gun are their earliest playthings, and they ride before they can read.

Relief of  
Ladysmith.

And so it came to pass that the six months' fighting already over was to lengthen out into a war of almost three years before the end was reached.

## CHAPTER IV

### A BREATHING SPACE

THE task which lay before General Buller after the relief of Ladysmith was to clear the Biggarsberg of the Boers, who had taken refuge in great numbers in that formidable line of rugged hills, which cuts off the northern triangle of Natal; it is pierced by three passes, each of which was believed to be strongly held and fortified by the enemy. But our worn-out army needed both to rest and recruit before another effort could be made, and during the next two months the Natal force were chiefly on the defensive, a pause which also gave the Boers time to recover and to strengthen their intrenchments in the Biggarsberg and the Drakensberg.

After a three days' halt at Ladysmith the whole of General Warren's division marched to Colenso, and thence entrained on March 9th for Pietermaritzburg, under orders to go down to Durban *en route* for the Cape side, but at the last minute General Hunter's division took its place. Travelling in South Africa in those days



was not too luxurious, open cattle trucks, as often as not, being the mode of conveyance. Return to  
Ladysmith.

Some few days spent in the base camp rested the men, and gave the regiment time to refit with boots, clothes, and other greatly needed requisites. While here the news reached them that Lord Roberts had entered Bloemfontein, the capital of the Orange Free State, on March 13th, the Boers retreating on Kroonstad, which town also came into our possession two months later.

The stay in Pietermaritzburg was not a long one, as the Boers soon became aggressive round Ladysmith, on account of which, orders were received by the regiment on March 21st to return thither, and an advance party under Lieutenant Coston, regimental transport officer, set out the same day.

Kits were packed, tents struck, and the battalion marched off to the station on the evening of Thursday, 22nd, proceeding in three trains to Ladysmith, and about two hours after noon on the following day the regiment was once more encamped to the north of that town in Surprise Hill Camp. That same day General Woodgate died at Mooi river, having lingered on for two months after the fatal 24th of January.

The first week at Surprise Hill passed quietly enough. The regiment relieved a picket of

Volunteer  
Company  
joins.

the Devons on the hills west of the camp, where they took up their outposts. The shell-splintered rocks gave abundant evidence that our gunners during the siege of Ladysmith had been finding out the Boer hiding-places, which the outposts were now glad enough to make use of, dirty as they were. Here we found many traces of the hasty flight of the Boers.

It was during this time we were joined by our Volunteer Service Company, which had mobilized at York in those gloomy weeks at the commencement of 1900, when the fate of Ladysmith, Kimberley, and Mafeking hung in the balance, and when the 1st Battalion York and Lancaster was guarding Springfield with Lieut.-Colonel Burn-Murdoch's detachment.

This company, which consisted of two officers, Lieutenants Chalmers and Boyle, with 112 non-commissioned officers and men under the command of Captain Marples, had sailed in the Guelph from Southampton on February 17th, followed ten days later by another draft of over 100 men in the Assaye under Lieutenant Moxon, which reached Durban one day before the Guelph.

On board the latter vessel there were, besides the York and Lancaster company, six other volunteer companies, all under command of Major the Hon. W. L. Vane, of the 1st Battalion Durham Light Infantry.

The weather at first was so rough that the Commanding Officer decided to let Queen's Regulations and military discipline go by the board until better days, which soon came. The chief occurrences of the voyage were inoculation against enteric, musketry practice—firing at old packing cases thrown overboard—pistol practice at hanging bottles, and occasional concerts and sports, one of the events being a so-called military tournament, in reality a pillow fight between two men astride a spar, the winner being the one who kept his balance without touching the pole with his hands.

Volunteer  
Company  
joins.

Five weeks after leaving Southampton the Guelph dropped anchor in Durban roadstead, and on March 28th, an intensely hot day, the troops disembarked. Only the day before this, just a month after the relief of Ladysmith, one of our most chivalrous and generous opponents, General Joubert, died.

On disembarking at Durban, the volunteers entrained for Ladysmith, a run of about eighteen hours, the line winding up the hills and passing through most beautiful scenery. The Tugela was crossed just as day broke, and in the morning light a dim view was obtained of the broken piers and girders of the old bridge. Ladysmith was reached early on Thursday, March 29th, and the York and Lancaster Volunteer Company went straight on to Surprise

Surprise Hill. Hill, about four miles from the town, where they marched into camp "all present and correct." They were then attached to the 1st Battalion York and Lancaster as K Company, for service in South Africa, and their doings will in future be included in these records of the regiment to which they formed such a valuable addition.

The camp lay just below the top of Surprise Hill, where Captain Paley of the Rifle Brigade lost his life, on December 9th, in the gallant and successful attempt to destroy the Boer howitzer on that hill, which had been annoying the besieged. The position was high, but the heat by day was intense; all the water had to be brought in tanks by train every morning; flies swarmed, even covering the food on the plates during meals; and later on the camp proved very unhealthy. At the top of the hill the view was, superb, looking south and west over Spion Kop, right across to the Drakensberg, and north as far as the Biggarsberg Mountains, with a view also of Ladysmith, Lombard's Kop, Bulwana Hill, and Caesar's Camp.

Orders soon came for a move. The left half, under Major Scholes, moved first, on March 30th, and bivouacked on the top of a kopje overlooking Nicholson's Nek. On April 3rd the right half battalion, comprising Head Quarters and five companies, under Lieut.-Colonel Kirk-

patrick, left for Thornhill Hill. Scarcely were they settled in their new quarters that night when orders were received to move off early next morning. As day dawned the tents were struck and everything packed up and carried down to the wagons at the foot of the kopje; as no carts could be got up, it was hard work. The two half battalions joined that day and marched to Modder Spruit, which was reached at the end of a long and trying six hours; here the entire Lancashire Brigade encamped. On the way up to Modder Spruit we met General Hunter's division coming down country, *en route* for the Cape side. At Elands-  
laagte.

Next day the brigade went on to Elands-laagte, where the rest of the Fifth Division, with the Second Division and some more of the Natal Field Force, were encamped in the valley. This position was near water and the railway, but it had the disadvantage of being low down. The hills in front of us were commanded by General Clery's division, therefore we were well out of rifle range.

On arriving the battalion pitched tents and began intrenching their camp, the work being done by companies in relays. On the hills, to the north of the camp, General Clery's outposts were in touch with the Boers, and on April 5th two men of the cavalry outposts were cut off by the enemy. On the 6th a draft of

At Elands-  
laagte.

two officers, Captain Learoyd and Lieutenant Gardner, with 117 non-commissioned officers and men arrived.

The days passed quietly and busily in outpost duty and trench-digging. The latter work proved to have been very necessary when, on Tuesday, 10th, the Boers once more reminded us of their existence. In the middle of parade that morning the enemy opened fire on General Clery's Divisional Camp two miles off that of the Fifth Division, where the York and Lancaster Regiment was stationed; several shells dropped near the railway station close to our lines, but the regiment was not actually under fire. Tents were quickly taken down, all baggage loaded on the wagons, and the battalion took up position for defence. The right half lined the trenches, the left half formed supports on the rising ground behind the camp. The Boers tried to execute a flank movement, and might have succeeded had they come on quickly in force. As it was our guns replied to and finally silenced the enemy's fire, when the cavalry moved out and compelled the Boers to evacuate their position.

It was a long day for the men, who remained in their trenches till after dark, and then lay down behind the intrenchments in quarter column. All blankets were packed in readiness for a move at any moment, and as it was a very cold night many suffered from chills and cramp.

That morning General Buller and his Staff rode over from Ladysmith and walked down the trenches. Jonono Kop.

It was surmised that the Boers would try to seize Jonono Kop, a very high hill of great strategical importance, being the most commanding position of any within big gun range. The 11th Brigade was moved early on the morning of April 11th to the high ground above Woodcote's Farm, and under Jonono Kop. On the night of the 12th two companies (H Company under Captain Brandreth, Volunteer Company under Captain Marples), under Colonel Kirkpatrick, took possession of Jonono Kop and plateau. Captain Marples was left on the plateau with a company and a half, whilst the remaining half company, with Colonel Kirkpatrick and Captain Brandreth, seized the top.

A small party of Boers was seen on the plateau, halfway up, but they retired without opening fire. Immediately on gaining the position, intrenchments were started, and, with the exception of an hour's rest, were continued all night and the following day.

The battalion moved on the 13th, and encamped in Jonono Vale. The water-supply from the spring in a nullah close by was improved, and pools dug to catch the water. Later on a further improvement was made by extending the railway line from the colliery at Elands-

Jonono Kop. laagte to the Divisional Camp, so that water could be got by rail.

Up to May 14th two and a half companies occupied Jonono Kop and plateau, and two companies the high ground between Woodcote's Farm and base of kop. These companies were relieved every three days; the reliefs were kept with Head Quarters in Jonono Vale.

In consequence of the increase of enteric an order was issued by the Commanding Officer "directing that non-commissioned officers and men should refrain as much as possible from drinking thick and muddy water, especially in standing pools when passed on the line of march; and they were also reminded that water is least injurious when *boiled*." Marching and working as the men did under a broiling sun, when either pure or boiled water was unattainable, even the muddiest pool possessed an almost irresistible fascination, which made it difficult to carry out the foregoing order, and enteric was in consequence rife.

On Easter Sunday two companies under Major Scholes relieved the companies on the hill, which then marched down to the camp below and were able for the first time for five nights to have an undisturbed rest, which lasted till all stood to arms an hour before daybreak as usual.

Road and sangar making went on steadily by day, and outpost duty claimed several com-



panies by night. The nights were long and very dark, and the officers who had to visit the outposts found it difficult to steer clear of rocks, sangars and trenches, added to which there were occasional false alarms, such as the passing of the wind over the mealie fields simulating an approach of the enemy. On one occasion in the daytime our scouts went too near the Boer lines and were fired on, losing two men killed and five wounded.

General Hildyard takes command, April 20th.

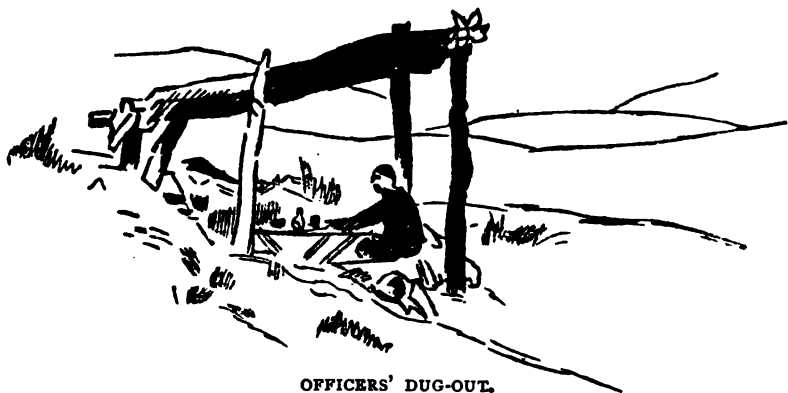
April 20th was marked by General Hildyard taking over command of the Fifth Division, as Sir Charles Warren was leaving for Bechuana-land; the latter General, when taking leave of the troops, expressed the hope that he might "have the good fortune to meet with them again in field or camp."

Road-making having sufficiently advanced, it was possible though difficult to get a gun up on to the Jonono plateau, and on Monday, 23rd, a naval 12-pounder arrived on a rough local limber, which broke when being got up the steepest part of the hill, owing to the oxen bolting off the track; but at the end of three hours' hard work it reached the plateau, and was placed in a gun pit previously prepared with sandbag breastworks, well screened by aloes, cactus, and thorn-bushes.

The nights were getting so cold that there was little danger of sleeping on outpost, since

Jonono. the only chance of keeping in any degree warm was to be constantly on the move.

The outpost on the plateau had been gradually improving in the way of small comforts. A little mess-room was dug out of the hill, with a ledge on three sides for seats, sand-bags filled with grass doing duty as cushions and forming an improvised Eastern divan lounge. This dug-out measured about 10 feet



OFFICERS' DUG-OUT.

by 10 feet, and had an upright pole in front, carrying a crosspiece to support a roof made of some old sheets of corrugated iron. A small oven was also constructed with corrugated iron and earth, and judging from an entry in one diary the mess-cook achieved a culinary triumph by means of it: "Had quite a palatable small roast joint last night for dinner, and real toast, the first I had tasted since I left the ship." For even such small mercies as these grace is

said in campaigning days, and the best is made Jonono.  
of both circumstances and material, witness a bed made of a small trench on the hillside, with filled sandbags at both sides to serve as a wind screen; a couple of blankets, two waterproof sheets, and an air pillow completed the whole arrangement.

One thing that kept the Boers comparatively quiet at this time was that their crops and farms needed attention, and grass fires were being started by them to burn off the old grass and insure good pasture in the spring. There were constant false rumours which kept the troops on the alert, and although these alarms did not always develop into realities, they were the cause of many disturbed nights.

But the time at Jonono was drawing to a close; General Buller's preparations were nearly completed for that series of skilful manœuvres by which the Boers were eventually driven from their mountain fastnesses of the Biggarsberg back into the Transvaal. After the York and Lancaster moved off from Jonono Vale about the middle of May, they were, with the exception of an occasional halt for road-making or railway-repairing, continuously trekking or fighting until at the end of June they settled down for a time to guard the line at Platrand. But of the interval between Jonono Vale and Platrand much remains to be told.

## CHAPTER V

### THE ADVANCE INTO THE TRANSVAAL

ONE of the military maxims of the great Napoleon was that "the first consideration with a general who offers battle should be the glory and honour of his arms. The safety and preservation of his men is only the second." To a successful general it must afford double satisfaction to accomplish both these ends, as was the case when General Buller finally cleared the Natal Colony of its invaders. The gratification of outmanœuvring the enemy by superior skill was enhanced by the further gratification of averting untold bloodshed and suffering. How well-devised and masterly was the scheme for clearing Natal can be better realized by a glance at the map than by any description in words. The apparently impenetrable Boer lines were broken up and rendered powerless by our turning movements, and Laing's Nek, the stiffest problem of the whole enterprise, and a position which might so easily have proved the scene of one of the most deadly struggles in the whole campaign, was eventually carried by us with comparatively small loss.

During the period of resting spent by the Natal force after the relief of Ladysmith, the Boers remained strongly intrenched in the northern triangle of our colony, which is formed by the Buffalo river on the east, the Drakensberg on the west, and the Biggarsberg Mountains on the south ; and it was this southern line of the triangle which had first to be attacked.

Wessel's  
Ridge.

On May 7th the main force under General Buller moved off once more from camp, leaving behind General Hildyard's brigade to form a vanguard and to hold the attention of the Boers. It was not until a week later that the York and Lancaster left Jonono early on the morning of Monday, 14th, when, after a four and a half hours' march, a halt was made below Battle Ridge at Elandslaagte, in the vicinity of our old camping-ground, and not far from the scene of the engagement of October 21st, 1899.

We were up and off again without breakfast at six o'clock on Tuesday, May 15th, advancing in attack formation on Wessel's Ridge, a point strongly fortified by the Boers, who were expected to make a stand here. But the place had become untenable in consequence of General Buller having by that time swept round on their right and entered Dundee. On the approach of our troops the enemy fled, and thus, instead of assaulting this difficult position, the brigade occupied the hill without opposition.

Wessel's Nek.

Having gained the summit a short rest was made, as the march from Elandslaagte had been a long and trying one, the ground between that and Wessel's Nek being very rough and hilly, the day hot, and the loads heavy. Each man had to carry 150 rounds of ammunition, rifle, mess-tin with his day's rations, water-bottle, haversack containing towel and soap, knife, fork, and spoon, dubbin and flannelette ; also a waterproof sheet with complete change of underclothing, in addition to jersey, cap, and greatcoat, the whole weighing about 45 lb. With the exception of the coats being subsequently carried on the wagons, the loads remained the same throughout the long marches and countermarches of General Buller's advance into the Transvaal.

The rest on the nek could not be for long, as sangars had to be built. Four companies were on outpost and four in support, and they felt the cold very severely that night. The wagons with the blankets could not be got up the nek, and therefore the greatcoats, which had been such a burden during the heat of the day, were doubly appreciated by the men.

The sangar-building having been completed next morning, the battalion moved off in the afternoon to Meran, a place about four miles to the north of the last bivouac. The day following, May 17th, after a hot march of four hours, Waschbank Farm was reached, where an accept-

able and abundant supply of oranges, lemons, and fresh vegetables was obtained. An orange after a long and dusty march was indeed a treat, and we were glad to give the Hindoo who was looking after the farm for his master the exorbitant price which he demanded.

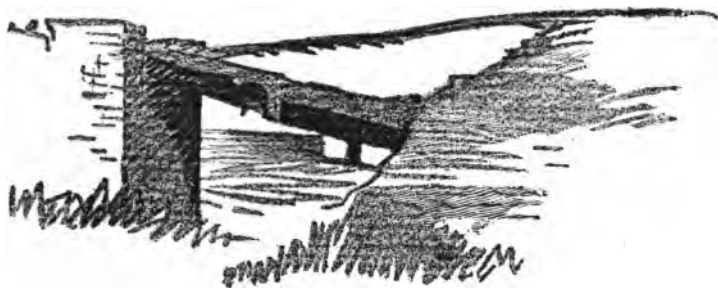
Crossing the  
Biggarsberg.

We were roused at 1 a.m., and moved off an hour later. As we climbed up the Berg in the early morning, we felt the first nip of the African frost. Soon after marching off one of the wagons stuck fast in a small spruit, having to be off-loaded before it could be extricated; these inevitable and vexatious accidents when on trek in an enemy's country sometimes spell disastrous results, but on this occasion nothing worse than half an hour's hard work and delay ensued.

The Biggarsberg, now no longer a formidable barrier, was crossed that day, May 18th, and after a midday halt in an old stone laager near Glencoe, another march of about seven miles in a northerly direction ended at Hatting's Spruit. Here the night was passed, Dannhauser being reached next day. We received orders that any further advance must cease for the present, as supplies were outdistanced, and could not be brought up owing to the Boers having damaged the railway line. To push on in a hostile country, without supplies, and leave a broken line of communication in our rear was manifestly impossible, so it became necessary to

Mending  
the line.

retrace our steps, and Sunday, 20th, found us back at Wild Duck Vlei, close to the Glencoe collieries. The battalion was told off into working parties for mending the line and making new deviations where the culverts had been destroyed. This work occupied two days and a half, after which we were once more on trek, reaching Dannhauser again early on the morning of Thursday, May 24th, Queen Victoria's birthday. The day was celebrated by a parade



A BROKEN CULVERT.

of the troops, and when the bugler of the 10th Brigade sounded the signal, General Wynne moved out to the head of the York and Lancaster Battalion and led three hearty cheers for her Majesty, whose health was drunk later on in the rum which was issued with extra rations in honour of the occasion.

A move was made before daylight on Friday, and a long and hard march of nearly eight hours, broken only by a halt at Alcocks Spruit for breakfast, brought us to Ingagane on the line



south of Newcastle. Just as the troops were marching off next day, a train which steamed into Ingagane station was greeted with loud cheers by the men, welcome and visible proof as it was of the success of their labours in repairing the line.

Newcastle,  
May, 1900.

Newcastle, which had been entered eight days previously by General Buller, was reached on May 26th, and having crossed the N'Kandi river, the battalion encamped at a spot situated a mile and a half to the north of the town. We had hoped to obtain fresh meat here in place of the monotonous bully beef, but were doomed to disappointment for that day at least, since, although the fresh meat was forthcoming, no fuel was procurable.

Passing through Newcastle it was grievous to notice the ravages which war had wrought in the once pretty place. However, we had come to our own again, and the work of restoration once begun was not destined to be rudely interrupted, as the Boers never regained possession of the town. The men were feeling the fatigue of the last thirteen days' hard work and marching, and were therefore glad of a quiet Sunday at Newcastle, when General Hildyard inspected the whole brigade after church parade.

Monday morning's start was a very early one, and a little before noon the Buffalo river was crossed by the bridge at Wool's Drift, little

Across the  
Buffalo.

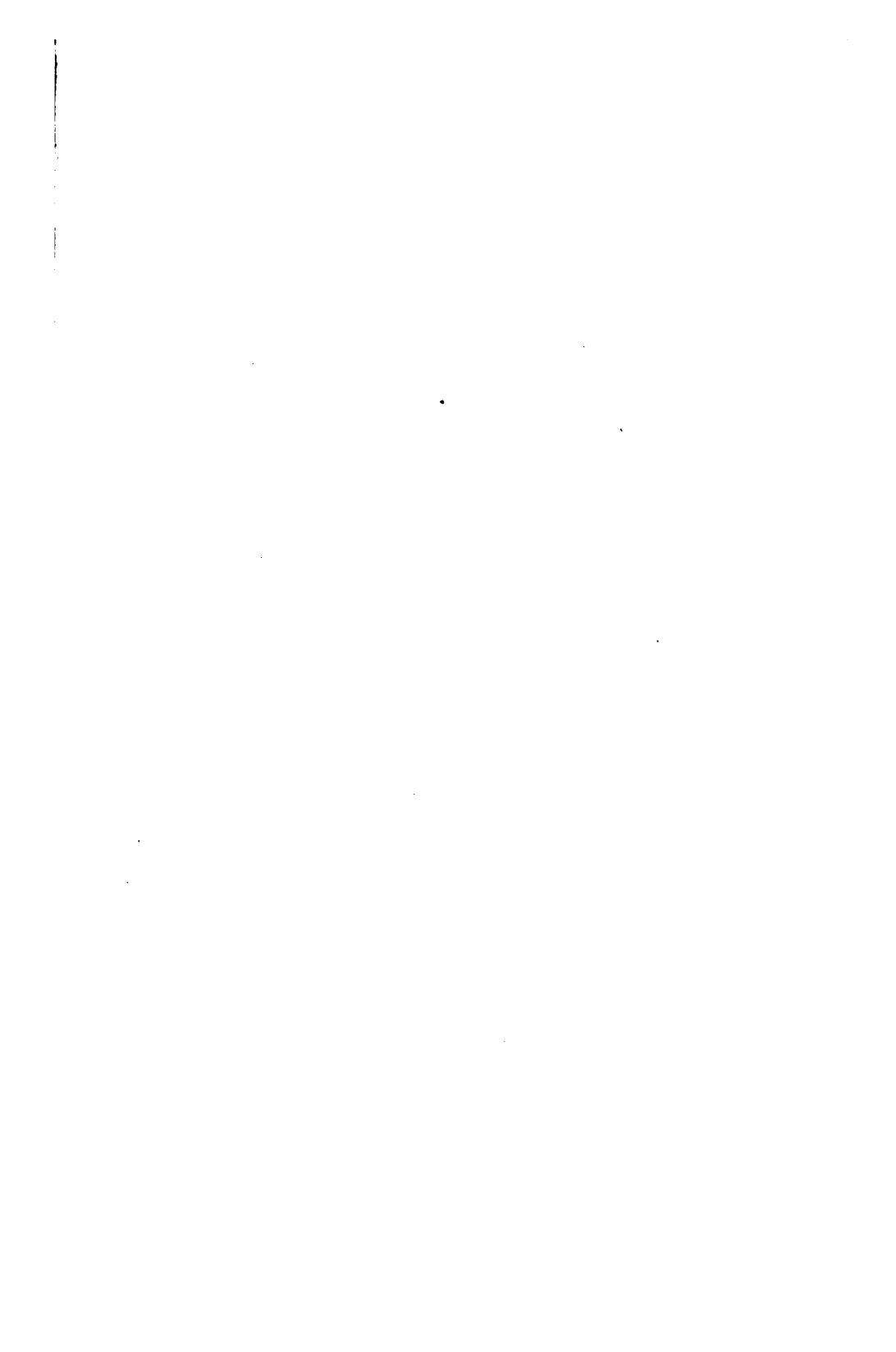
opposition being encountered; for although our advanced cavalry were sniped, the Boers retreated on Utrecht when our troops appeared in force. The York and Lancaster forming advanced guard to the brigade were the first infantry to cross the border into the enemy's country. It was here we had our first sight of the Transvaal, and here too the first real touch of winter; the cold at night was so intense that any standing water was always thick and coated with ice in the morning, although the midday heat was fierce enough to burn out all remembrance of the midnight cold. This incredibly quick rise and fall in the temperature added considerably to the trials of trekking.

The day which saw the 11th Brigade and the mounted troops of the Natal army across the Buffalo river was further marked in the war calendar by the formal proclamation at Bloemfontein of the annexation of the Orange Free State, thenceforth to be known as Orange River Colony.

Our first night in Transvaal territory was spent at Wool's Drift, and the following day five companies under Major Lousada, with two 12-pounder guns, were left at that spot to guard the Buffalo bridge and the communications into Natal. Guarding the lines of communication upon which our supplies depended was becoming every day a more necessary and a more difficult



A TRIBUTARY OF THE BUFFALO RIVER



undertaking. The unceasingly lengthening line presented ever fresh points of attack to the enemy, and our army, advancing further and further into a hostile country, found their opportunities of obtaining food, except from our own stores at the base, growing daily less and less. To keep the line intact, small parties had to be stationed along it at intervals, and their task was no light one, involving as it did heavy cares and responsibilities, anxious days and sleepless nights spent in watching, lest the enemy should cut or injure in any way what was the main artery of the fighting force at the front.

In the  
Transvaal.

One of the points in General Buller's plan for forcing the Boers out of the Drakensberg, after having outflanked the Biggarsberg position, was to make a pretence of turning their main stronghold at Laing's Nek on the east, when in reality he meant to turn it on the west. By this feint the Boers were led to suspect us of wishing to enter by their side door on our right, and they accordingly directed their attention to that point, thus giving us an opportunity for completing arrangements to enter by the left. This enabled us to take them unawares in the rear, without uselessly expending lives and energies in the attempt to force by a frontal attack the almost unassailable Laing's Nek, the main pass into the Transvaal.

The crossing of the Buffalo river and an ad-

Advance on  
Utrecht.

vance on Utrecht by General Hildyard's division formed an important detail in this scheme, in which the York and Lancaster took part. Four of our companies with Head Quarters left Wool's Drift for Utrecht on Tuesday morning, May 29th. Rothman's Farm, which lies to the east of the town, was reached about 6 p.m., after a hard day, made still harder by scarcity of water. Here they bivouacked that night, two companies of the King's Own (Royal Lancaster) Regiment having the arduous task of finding the outposts on the Belelasberg, which necessitated a long march and a stiff climb in the dark. The chief incident on the march to Rothman's Farm occurred during the midday halt, when firing was heard ahead ; the South Lancashires and South African Light Horse were ordered off at once, encountering a party of Boers with whom they had a slight skirmish, in which the South African Light Horse suffered.

Relieving an outpost of the King's Own (Royal Lancasters) on the hills north of the town was our next day's work, and as it was impossible to get any wagons up the steep rugged ascent, blankets and other things had to be carried by the men. Nor were their labours over on reaching the summit, for sangars had to be built to improve the position, two companies remaining on outpost and two in support. Here again scarcity of water was a trouble, the

nearest procurable being down the hill two miles distant. Utrecht.

From their elevated position the battalion could see General Hildyard's brigade advancing against Utrecht and halting about a mile short of the town, while a deputation was sent on to negotiate with the townspeople. The proposals for a surrender were well supported by a military demonstration on the following day, when the 11th Brigade moved off again from camp; the naval guns were trained on to the town, the light guns went forward, and the infantry advanced in extended formation, with the result that Utrecht surrendered without a shot being fired. The Transvaal flag was replaced by the Union Jack, the municipal keys with a few old rifles were speedily handed in, and a hasty and formal surrender was made, which was as hastily disregarded as soon as our troops had gone once more. When our force came in, the Boers for the most part left the town, and went east up the Belelasberg, returning directly our army was no longer visible. The same day Lord Roberts hoisted the British flag at Johannesburg, but Utrecht was the first town in the Transvaal occupied by the Natal Field Force.

The place having surrendered, the South African Light Horse relieved the Belele Hill outpost, which then returned to Wool's Drift, an eleven hours' march; and on June 2nd General

De Wet's  
Farm.

Hildyard's force moved to Imbazane Spruit on the way to Botha's Pass, leading into Orange River Colony, and the place selected for General Buller's flanking movement. Several drifts along the line of march had to be repaired to enable the British column to follow on.

At De Wet's Farm, which was reached on



DE WET'S FARM.

Sunday, June 3rd, the York and Lancaster had two companies on outpost, and furnished a guard of one officer and twenty men to look after the farm. The looting regulations being very strict, and oranges and other fruit very tempting to thirsty men after a long, hot march, not to mention things which might be lying about, such as firewood, etc., orders had been given that whenever a halt near a farm was made an



officer's guard should be mounted to insure nothing being taken. An armistice,  
June 2-5.

It was during the days spent at De Wet's Farm that Generals Buller and Christian Botha agreed on an armistice of three days. This delay was caused by the Boer leader being unable to act without referring to General Louis Botha for instruction. Although their talk eventually ended in nothing, and no satisfactory settlement was arrived at, yet it was a breathing space for both sides after their arduous work and before their conflict recommenced. The time was occupied in fitting out our men with clothes and boots, the latter being specially needed, as many of the men had been reduced to using putties wound round their feet, the old boots being carried into camp slung on the rifles as proof that they had not been bartered away or otherwise disposed of.

The unavailing armistice ended on the evening of Tuesday, 5th, and before another twenty-four hours had passed the 10th Brigade, under General Coke, had seized the Van Wyk position as a preliminary to the taking of Botha's Pass. The York and Lancaster, who were sent as an escort to two 4.7 guns and two 12-pounders, to guard General Coke's flank, took up a position for the night at Yellow Boom Farm, where the camping-ground was low and swampy, and where we had a cold wait of nearly four hours

Taking  
Botha's Pass,  
June, 1900.

before the wagons came on with greatcoats and blankets.

When morning dawned on Friday, June 8th, orders were received that Botha's Pass was to be taken that day.

The road which leads from Natal into Orange River Colony, across Botha's Pass, runs for some distance alongside the Ingogo river, through a deep gorge between the hill of Van Wyk on the south and Spitz Kop on the north, both hills commanding the route along which our troops must march. The hill of Van Wyk being already in our possession, Spitz Kop remained to be carried before our line of advance was secure.

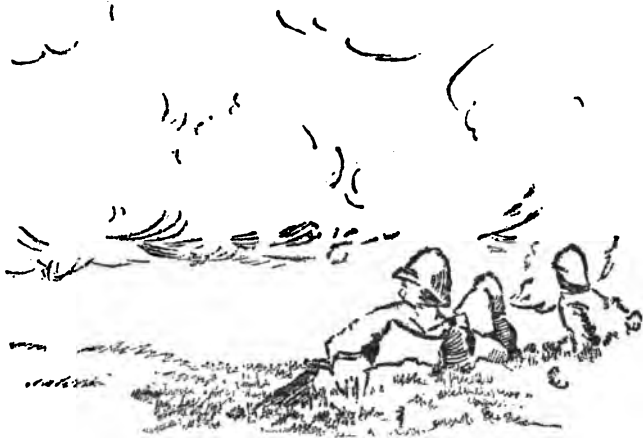
The York and Lancaster were lucky in not having to move off until half-past ten, which allowed time for breakfast, their only meal that day. Under cover of our guns, which blazed away at the hill over our heads, the Ingogo river was crossed at 12.30 p.m. and the advance began. The regiment deployed and advanced to attack at 1 p.m., under cover of two field batteries, five companies being in the firing line and five in support. The brigade deployed in four long lines, which extended for about two miles. On the left were the Lancashire Fusiliers with the York and Lancaster, the King's Own Royal Lancasters and South Lancashires being on the right. Had the

enemy elected to hold the Drakensberg range in force, or even to have lined the heights with a few men at intervals, the attacking party must inevitably have suffered terribly during the laborious ascent, which was so steep that to charge up it would have been impossible. As it was, the only man to be seen on the hill was a Kaffir, evidently signalling to the Boers; but when he observed how close we were to his kraal, from which a white flag was flying, he ran down the hill. A bullet, however, found him out before he reached the kraal, and he was subsequently discovered dead. The Boers retired without making a stand.

Taking  
Botha's Pass,  
June, 1900.

The top of the hill being gained, the battalion, in order to avoid a ravine, advanced in extended formation to the right, and swarmed up another ridge, from which Boers could be seen retiring some distance away. They then wheeled to the left across an open plain swept by a frontal and enfilading fire from the enemy's guns, and made for a ridge overlooking the Botha's Pass road. Pom-poms, field guns, and mausers all screamed their loudest, the pom-pom shells coming with fiendish rapidity and exploding in every direction. One of the Dutch military attachés with General Botha's army has given it as his opinion that "quick-firing artillery which does not allow an enemy to pull himself together between the shots tries *morale* in a very high

Botha's Pass. degree . . . it is the 'ffts, ffts' of the bullets flying about one, striking the ground to right and left, throwing up little clouds of dust, which arouse the sense of danger . . ."<sup>1</sup> The Boers opened fire at our first lines when going over the plain, and later, when we had gained the crest of the ridge overlooking the Botha's Pass road, the



WATCHING THE GRASS FIRE.

enemy fired at the supports, who had advanced in extended formation along a ridge parallel to the firing line.

In spite of this hot fire the York and Lancaster casualties were only five, and the men continued to advance at a wonderfully steady pace, maintaining an unbroken line. They never even

<sup>1</sup> "Lessons of the South African War," by Captain T. H. Ram.

hurried when, going up the next hill, they were nearing cover, but went down in line on the crest. The Boers had lighted a grass fire to cover their retirement, and until the smoke from this had to some extent subsided no object was visible, so we saved our ammunition, and when the smoke cleared off we could see the enemy, out of rifle range, mounting their horses in haste. Firing ceased about 3.30 p.m. Although our guns had limbered up as soon as we had gained the heights and followed as quickly as possible, they were too late to reach the Boers with their fire, and the cavalry were not able to get into them or prevent them from getting away with their guns and wagons.

Owing to their timely flight and the many grass fires kindled by them, we did little damage to the Boers that day, but Botha's Pass was in possession of General Hildyard's force before sundown, and the first step towards the turning of the Laing's Nek position was successfully accomplished. It was here that the Volunteer Company received their baptism of fire, and took it with the same *sangfroid* as the oldest hand, deserving every scrap of the high praise which Buller heaped on the men in general for their bravery and the steadiness of their advance.

The bivouac that night on the top of the pass near the Custom House, which marks the frontier

Botha's Pass.

between Natal and Orange River Colony, was none too comfortable; a thick mist, a drizzling rain and an intense frost being felt all the more for lack of greatcoats and blankets, which were not obtained before the small hours of the morning, owing to the difficulty of getting wagons up the steep pass.

Bringing the wagons over the pass occupied the greater part of Saturday, 9th, and the battalion moved off about four miles away to a better bivouac ground, with water close at hand, near Uys' Farm. This was quite the best Boer's house we had so far seen; it was a fine two-storied stone house with plenty of trees round and the farm well stocked with poultry, which we bought from the owner, who was living there. Here we found some Boer doctors in charge of wounded in ambulances which contrasted favourably with our own. Sunday was chiefly spent by the 11th Brigade on the march towards Gans Vlei, lying slightly to the north of Uys' Farm, and overlooked by a kopje from which the Boers had been previously ousted by the South African Light Horse after a hard fight. The battalion halted *en route* to make a ford over an arm of the Klip river by which the wagons might cross.

And now, three days after the occupation of Botha's Pass, came the stiff fight at Alleman's Nek, seven miles to the north-east of Gans Vlei

and to the rear of Laing's Nek, the main object of attack. The York and Lancaster, as part of the 11th Brigade, started the day by seizing four kopjes which were supposed to be held by a formidable number of Boers; but, as the event proved, the ridge had in reality been abandoned and left for the brigade to occupy without having to storm the position, as they were fully prepared to do. On this occasion, as on previous ones since the advance on Botha's Pass, the enemy's tactics were directed less towards stopping our advance than towards avoiding an encounter, by moving off to new vantage-grounds. For the remainder of that day the York and Lancaster were, in company with the rest of their brigade, in support of the 10th Brigade, which was told off to seize the heights commanding the pass on the right, those on the left being meanwhile attacked and taken by the 2nd Brigade.

Alleman's  
Nek.

We had a good view of the battle during the entire day from our position in reserve, and, having taken up our post, we waited there in case the 2nd and 10th Brigades should require reinforcements.

It was a fine sight to watch the artillery advancing to within 3,000 yards of the nek, and steadily shelling the heights in spite of the Boers' reply with their well-concealed high velocity guns and pom-poms, which latter were

Alleman's Nek. especially attentive to the naval guns. When the shelling had gone on until 2 p.m., it seemed as if no living thing could remain on the nek, so searching had been the fire, so well had the gunners done their work.

The infantry of the 2nd and 10th Brigades then advanced in long extended lines up the nek, which the Boers were still holding strongly, and from which their fire came hailing down on the gallant men laboriously toiling up the steep. It was a good climb even for a man unencumbered by rifle or other heavy trappings, but doubly so to those who heard that relentless song of death conveyed to them by the hissings and sputterings of the enemy's mausers and pom-poms.

However, on they went, and the Boers did not hold their vantage-ground, or the casualty list would have told another story of death and wounds. A frontal attack was necessary as there was no way round. Our flanks were protected by the cavalry under Dundonald, Gough, and Brocklehurst.

When night fell the success of the day was assured : Alleman's Nek was in our possession, and Laing's Nek was no longer an insoluble problem for General Buller and the Natal Army.

This advantage was next day followed up by a march on Volksrust, a Transvaal town just



over the Natal border, which had been abandoned by the Boers, who left in haste by train early on the Tuesday, June 12th, after their defeat at Alleman's Nek, taking with them all their guns. Volksrust.

The Boers did little damage to Volksrust, being their own town and one which they never imagined that we could occupy. Even when their dream of driving us into the sea and overrunning Natal became unreal, they did not think we could negotiate the three strongholds of Alleman's Nek, Laing's Nek, and Botha's Pass, which guarded the Transvaal borders, and which they had taken such pains to render more impregnable than nature had already made them. Snugly hidden in their well-planned trenches at Laing's Nek, they laughed when they saw the force advancing against them, and gloated over the idea of the foolish khaki coming straight up to be slaughtered. But they became uneasy when at the same time guns were heard in the distance, and Botha's Pass and Alleman's Nek respectively fell to the 11th and 10th Brigades, and the Second Division went through the great Laing's Nek unopposed. The Boer position had been turned, and to prevent the khakis getting completely round them they had to retire precipitately.

The battalion marched through the town on

**Volksrust.** Wednesday, 11th, and encamped near to the magazine and prison north of the town. A few Boers came in to surrender, and two among them with their old father were especially noticeable, looking as they did like sons of Anak. The old man told us that he had been a subject of the Queen before we were born, so that we need not worry further about his good faith, which perhaps he thought we doubted when we expressed surprise that he had surrendered with no arms. Old age and rheumatism had no doubt prevented his taking any part in the war, but he took this his first opportunity for coming to join his real friends, and later he and his sons all helped very considerably as guides by their knowledge of the country and the language. He paid for his loyalty to us by having his house and farm looted by Christian Botha. It was a difficult position for loyalists to live on their farms, where at night they were out of our protection; to remain loyal meant that the Boers came down and took by force what the loyalists were unwilling to give freely. After the war they were treated with contempt by those who had remained in the field till the end, and handshoppers, as they were called, were cut even by their relatives for having surrendered before the end of the war was officially declared.

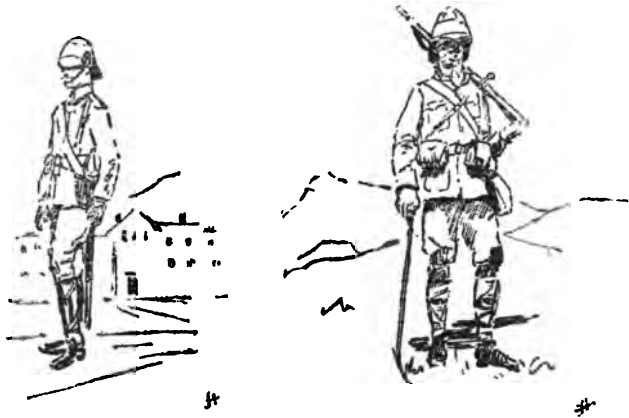
Blowing up the ammunition left by the Boers,

paying the troops, rifle inspection, and other duties occupied the battalion a few days at Volksrust before they again started on trek, on June 16th. After spending one night at a spot two miles north of Sandspruit station, west of the railway line, they reached Wakkerstrom next day, which happened to be a Sunday. The baggage wagons only came on two hours later, owing to the oxen being done up, many of them falling down exhausted. The poor beasts were not accustomed to being worked in winter time, without extra food, which it was impossible to carry on these long and continuous treks, even the men often enough only getting three-quarters or half rations.

Only one day at Wakkerstrom, where a great many Boers came in to surrender, and then we were up and off in a north-westerly direction, stopping by the way at Sandspruit and Paardekop, with a halt between to allow General Clery's division to go through. On the 22nd we served as escort to a supply convoy, and our next bivouacs were at Badenhorst's Farm and Katbosch Spruit. We finally reached Standerton on Sunday, June 24th, after crossing the Vaal river for the first time at Kruger's bridge, which the Boers had not had time to blow up when they destroyed the railway bridge.

A two days' rest at Standerton was much needed, for, although the men were tolerably

Wakkerstrom. fit, their feet as well as their boots were the worse for the incessant marching. For more than ten weeks the regiment had been on trek, sometimes doing twenty miles a day, over rough hilly country, always sleeping out in the open and doing outpost duty on an average every third night ; but the time was soon coming when we were to settle down at Platrand for more than two months to guard the Natal lines of communication.



BEFORE AND AFTER.

*From a sketch by Lieutenant Headlam.*

## CHAPTER VI

### GUARDING THE LINE AND THE ATTACK ON UTRECHT

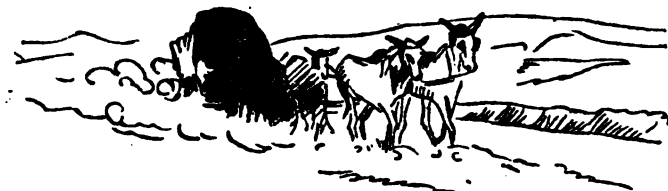
THREE days previous to the taking of Botha's Pass, Lord Roberts had entered Pretoria, and everywhere our prospects were brightening. But it was a little premature to conclude, as some optimists did, that because the two Boer capitals were in our possession, and Natal freed from invaders, the end of the war had come ; though, on the other hand, even the most pessimistic prophet hardly foresaw a continuance of the struggle for nearly two more years.

There being now no responsible government to answer for the commandos, many of them went about the country looting and burning farms, destroying railway bridges, and by all the means in their power postponing indefinitely the chances of peace. With guerilla warfare such as this going on, our lines of communication were constantly threatened, and it was a distinct advantage to us that, now Natal was clear, the railway from Durban was available

Platrand,  
June, 1900.

for conveying supplies to the army in the field, instead of everything being forwarded via Cape Town, a much longer route, and one more exposed to attack.

It was for the purpose of guarding the railway that the York and Lancaster were suddenly ordered off from Standerton, which town we left on Tuesday, June 26th, bivouacking that night at Kroomdrai, the next station south of Standerton. On Wednesday we proceeded to Platrand, where we encamped about 300 yards



MULE AMBULANCE WAGON.

from the railway station. By this time the oxen were so completely done up that it was found necessary to replace them by mules, and, the latter travelling more quickly than the oxen, the transport wagons got into camp almost as soon as the men, which allowed us to turn in at once without a wearisome wait.

General Buller, who was at Platrand when the battalion arrived, wired at once for tents to be sent on, which was done next day in time for them to be pitched, and it was good to have our tents again for the first time since leaving

Jonono Kop. Anything for a covering! and for the sense of feeling that there was a refuge from the monotony of the endless veldt and kopjes, which became aggressive in their never-changing aspect, and from which there was no escape. Now we got at least a canvas home, and a great relief it was; for, although tents did not keep off all the rain, and would not stand against a high wind, at any rate they broke the keen coldness of the night air, and kept the hoar frost of the early morning from our faces. Every third night we lost the comfort of these shelters, when the turn came for outpost duty in the trenches surrounding the camp.

Platrand,  
June, 1900.

By the time the battalion had been a week at Platrand, the Natal railway line was repaired, and General Buller went on to meet Lord Roberts at Pretoria.

The Head Quarters of the 11th Brigade were established for the present in the station-master's house at Platrand, and we settled down to assist in the task of keeping the rails and bridges along the line from being tampered with. General Wynne had just started a system of stealthy patrols, small parties being sent out by night to lie in ambush and to search in the culverts and other likely hiding-places for Boers, or dynamite fires put ready to explode. Lying out in the cold for hours and hours, waiting for an enemy who frequently did not appear, made the nights

Stealthy  
Patrols.

seem unusually long. Many a time darkness and driving mist added to the difficulties of those on outpost, to which latter duty the York and Lancaster contributed three companies every night. In addition to this they furnished three companies for inlying picket, whose duty it was to stand to arms at retreat and at reveille, and sleep ready dressed to turn out at a moment's notice with their arms handy for any emergency.

Stealthy patrol was on the whole more trying, and considerably more difficult, than outpost duty. The following incident will illustrate the difficulty of keeping a reconnoitring party well extended out and in line in an open country on a dark thick night, when an object only a yard in front cannot be seen. A party, extended out on either side, and in charge of Captain Learoyd, was going down the line, when word was passed that the left wing had lost touch, so our line was halted to allow the missing wing to come on, it being supposed that they had not kept up with the rest. Soon, however, a steady tramp of footsteps was heard coming up the railway line, and advancing towards our stealthy patrol. We should have expected to see the enemy bearing down on us, had it not been for the regularity of the pace, which betrayed the fact that they were some of our men, for Boer ways are not our ways, and their tactics are quieter and more stealthy than



ours. When the advancing party was challenged and halted, they turned out to be the lost left wing, who, finding themselves separated from the rest of our line, had hurried on to catch us up. The sergeant in charge at once said to his officer, "Oh, I knew we should come on you, sir, as we kept straight on and came to the railway for a guide," whereas he had in reality been describing a half circle, which ended by bringing him face to face with us. Outpost duty.

On outpost duty, too, while visiting sentries, it was very difficult to find one's way on pitch-dark nights. An officer losing himself on one occasion when visiting his posts, walked round and round a sentry without ever finding him on his picket. When by luck he eventually stumbled on the man, he found he had been quite near all the time, but walking in a circle. The officer naturally expostulated with the sentry, asking why he had not challenged him, but he only received the rather annoying answer, "Oh! ah! I knewed it was you, sir, all the time."

In consequence of this incident low whistles came to be adopted as signals to obviate this difficulty.

Numerous expeditions by day were made against small parties of Boers. In these expeditions the Boers generally waited until a retirement was ordered, and then followed us up and gave our troops a pretty hot time of it; those

Outpost duty. to the east of the railway line were under Colonel Bethune ; those to the west under Colonel Kirkpatrick. On one occasion four companies of the regiment went out with a flying column under Colonel Bethune's command ; we came on the Boers occupying a semicircular ridge covering the road to Amersfort. They opened gun fire on us, and we replied. The Volunteer Company was with us, and one man had his water-bottle hit with a shrapnel bullet. That night Colonel Bethune arranged for a fight next day—we to advance against the centre. However, a message arrived from Paardekop from General Wynne, ordering us to retire. We were supposed to have Louis Botha and 3,000 men and twelve guns in front of us. The retreat began before daybreak, and we were back at Platrand by 11 a.m.

We could not do more than keep off the marauding parties for a time, as we had not sufficient men to hold the positions when taken, and consequently the enemy returned when our forces retired to camp. A farmer near Platrand having offered us his farm produce for sale to save it from being looted by the Boers, an expedition was sent out early one morning with mule wagons to bring back flour, oats, potatoes, mealies, turkeys, chickens, eggs and butter for the hospital stores. In crossing the Sandspruit river on the return journey, the mules refused to

pull, and the entire contents of one wagon had to be carried across by the men, which took nearly an hour. Mules go very well so long as no difficulties occur, but then they lose heart and will not work or pull together; there is nothing more aggravating than for this to happen at a sticky spruit near home, just as you are congratulating yourself that you will be in camp before dark. Then there is trouble. Every available driver and leader comes up to help and urge on the mules by shouts and whips, with the result that the mules lash out and scream, finally getting stubborn and refusing to work. Or they elect to pull individually and with jerks, when the harness breaks and the wagon sticks. It has then to be unloaded by hand, and everything carried over to the other side of the spruit. After that the mules will perhaps deign to pull over the empty wagon, which is loaded up again with a silent prayer that the remaining ground to camp may be level. Mules.

When the routine work was fairly regulated, Colonel Bethune, who commanded the mounted infantry, organized some games by way of relaxation for the men, and football matches, pony races, and polo helped to break the monotony of the work, which had to go on regardless of Sundays or holidays of any kind.

On July 16th four companies were sent to

General  
Buller  
leaves for  
Lydenburg.

Leeuw Spruit to relieve the South Lancashires and to guard a 4.7 gun. At the beginning of August the regiment was still further split up, three companies being at Leeuw Spruit, three at Platrand, and three to the east of the line about a mile from the Platrand Head Quarters. This change in the dispositions was due to General Buller taking with him all available troops for the northern advance on Lydenburg, which was to be made in conjunction with Lord Roberts from Pretoria. The defence parties along the railway were greatly weakened by the move, and in some places half a company had to hold what had previously been held by a whole one.

Our stay at Platrand of more than ten weeks came to an end on August 31st. General Hildyard with a large force, consisting of the 11th Brigade and corps troops of the division, supplemented by other mounted troops, moved east from Sandspruit on the Volksrust-Standerton railway line. Paardekop, Sandspruit, and Houts Nek were successively the halting-places of the regiment, and on September 5th the force reached and occupied Wakkerstrom. The York and Lancaster were the head of the main body on this occasion, and two of our companies formed part of the advanced guard. There was some slight skirmishing on the march, and Bethune's Mounted Infantry, who were fighting on both flanks of the advancing troops, had



A DONGA : NEAR HOUTS NEK



three casualties. All the Boers had cleared out of the town and got safely away before our guns got up, or the mounted infantry were free to start in pursuit.

Taking  
Wakkerstrom  
Hill.

On the next day the honour of seizing the high hill north of the town was given to the battalion, and this hard task, which might well have been dangerous had the Boers shown anything like a bold front, was quickly carried out. It was a stiff climb accoutred as we were, but we had a good guide in Major Scholes, who was the first to reach the top. The hill being steep and rocky, it took two and a half span (forty) oxen to pull the gun up, although it was sent round by the easiest route. The men ascended by a shorter and more direct way, the last bit of which they had to climb on their hands and knees. The top being gained, sangar-building was commenced, and Head Quarters with five companies were told that this cold and inhospitable hill which they had seized was to be their home for some months. One company was sent down to the town, and three others were held in readiness to move on with the division.

An account of the doings of the three last-named companies after parting from the others has been furnished by Lieutenant Headlam, the regimental transport officer, who acted as adjutant and quartermaster to the detachment.

Lieutenant  
Headlam's  
account.

Lieutenant F. E. Ashton commanded B Company with Second Lieutenant H. V. R. Hodson as subaltern ; Lieutenant H. W. Duckworth led C Company ; and E Company was under the charge of Second Lieutenant D. D. Wilson.

" Our expected move from Wakkerstrom was not long delayed, and before the sun rose on September 9th the three companies under Major Scholes were parading in a cold mist, and had said good-bye to Head Quarters, little thinking the separation would last for nearly a year.

" We found the infantry part of the advance guard in support to Bethune's Mounted Infantry, Gough's Mounted Infantry, and the newly formed Fifth Division Mounted Infantry, to which the regiment had already supplied a company. After a long and trying march, during which the mounted troops of the advance guard were constantly engaged with the rearguard of a Boer commando, Major Scholes was ordered to take his command to the assistance of the mounted infantry. They were engaged in clearing some steep and rocky kopjes, the possession of which was necessary to insure the safety of the right flank of the column on the next day's march. The operation was carried out without loss, the Boers having already retired before the mounted infantry, leaving a dead man and a dead horse behind them. B Company, pushing to the front, had the satisfac-



tion of opening fire at the retreating enemy, though, the range being excessive, probably no damage was done.

March to  
Utrecht.

"The nights were extremely cold, and a good deal of difficulty was experienced in getting rations and blankets up the almost inaccessible kopjes where the companies bivouacked. The 1st Lancashire Fusiliers and 2nd Royal Lancaster regiments helped by providing all their pack-mules, and by 9 p.m. that night rations and the men's greatcoats had reached the top. B Company, however, in an advanced position, never received their coats, and men and officers passed most of the night huddled round cowdung fires.

"The march was continued next day, and the detachment, remaining on the kopjes on which they had bivouacked, acted as flank-guard to the long baggage train which, at that period of the war, accompanied our columns.

"It was well past midday before we moved on, joining the rearguard. Passing through a dangerous nek, from which our 4.7 guns had in the morning dislodged the enemy, inflicting some slight loss, the transport finally reached the allotted camping-ground between eight and nine in the evening. It was very dark, and the moon had not risen when the wagons were at length parked. Teas were prepared for the men, but it was not until almost midnight that

March to  
Utrecht.

Major Scholes led his little party into camp, after another long and trying march, and even then C Company had to go on for another mile and a half and take up a section of the outpost line.

"Next day the honoured post of advance guard was once more assigned to the three companies, which now called themselves 'Bethune's flying Infantry'—Colonel Bethune being the officer in command of the advance guard each day. The Boers again kept a safe way from the column, and in the afternoon we descended a long hill and entered the little town of Utrecht, which was already in possession of our troops which had come out from Newcastle.

"We found, as we expected, that the detachment was to form part of the garrison of the place, which it had now been decided to hold permanently. Two companies of the 2nd Royal Lancasters and half a company of the Fifth Division Mounted Infantry under Captain Rowley, Dorset Regiment, were also given to Major Scholes, who was selected to command the garrison. A 12-pounder naval gun was placed at his disposal.

"The town of Utrecht lies at the mouth of a very narrow valley with steep sides, which forms a sort of wedge into the Belelasberg range. (See plan p. 100.) This range runs north and south of the town. To the west a road passes over

open, rolling veldt to Newcastle (twenty-six miles distant), crossing the Buffalo river over a bridge near Umbana kopje. Utrecht is a scattered village laid out in plots, with parallel roads, and has no building of any note, with the exception of the usual pattern Dutch church and the Landrost's office. The 12-pounder gun was placed on the top of the spur, north of the town, and C and E Companies took up a position to guard it. B Company and one company of the Royal Lancasters were in the town, the other company of the Royal Lancasters holding a hill about one and a half miles south-east of the town, detached from the main range, and the possession of which more or less safeguarded the town from an attack from the east.

"On September 9th Major Scholes was obliged to go to hospital, and this left Lieutenant Ashton senior officer with the detachment. However, by the end of the month Major Scholes was back at duty again.

"Lieutenant Headlam was appointed Magistrate and Town Commandant on October 8th, and he also performed the duties of garrison Adjutant.

"E and C Companies held sports on October 10th on North Hill, which were most successful, and were followed by a camp-fire concert. Shortly afterwards E Company was brought down into the town.

Disposition  
of troops.

"Though there were at this time many rumours and reports of an intended Boer attack on us, nothing of any consequence occurred until the 13th of November. On this day thirteen of our men under Sergeant Carrier, E Company, started off in a mule wagon for Newcastle *en route* to join the mounted infantry at Pretoria. About six miles out of Utrecht the wagon ran into a Boer ambush, and after a short fight the whole party was forced to surrender. Four men were wounded. The Boers were about forty strong. Sergeant Carrier was afterwards court-martialled on a charge of neglecting to take proper precautions, but he was honourably acquitted.

"November 26th was memorable, owing to a visit of inspection by General Burn-Murdoch, and also for a tremendous hailstorm.

"Two days after that Major Scholes, who had never quite recovered from his attack of fever, handed over command of the garrison to Major A. J. Chapman of the Dublin Fusiliers, and left Utrecht for a short period of sick leave.

"Almost immediately a change took place in the dispositions, and B Company relieved the Royal Lancasters on East Hill; C Company at the same time left North Hill and came down to the town, E Company resuming its old quarters on North Hill.

"On December 2nd a small party consisting of

about forty men of C Company and thirty of the Royal Lancaster Regiment, under the command of Major Butler of the Dorsets (who had been appointed S.S.O., Utrecht), made a night march, and by daybreak had taken up a position on the Belelasberg at the head of a road which leads down from the mountains to the plain below. Along this road a Boer commando was expected to come *en route* for a raid on the Buffalo district.

December  
2nd, 1900.

"Shortly after it became light, four Boers appeared and came straight to where our men were lying in ambush. When quite close the order 'Hands up' was called out, but instead of surrendering the Boers turned and galloped off. One fell, shot in many places and another, whose horse was shot, surrendered. Boer reinforcements in large numbers shortly arrived on the scene, and some hot fighting took place. Two men were killed, and three wounded. A successful retirement was made in the evening, after the Boers had been driven back.

"Sergeant Randall of C Company was conspicuously gallant on this occasion, and was awarded the D.C. Medal for his conduct.

"The Boers attacked Vryheid upon December 11th, and all reports tended to show that Utrecht was to be their next objective, native information having warned the garrison that Louis Botha had, in an address to the burghers at

Attack on  
Vryheid.

Tabankulu—a hill about eight miles from the town—told them not to be discouraged by the Vryheid reverse, adding that he intended to attack Wakkerstrom and Utrecht.

“ Captain A. M. Haines arrived on December 12th to command the detachment *vice* Major Scholes, and an anxious time was spent during the next fortnight, outpost duty being especially hard and trying.

“ The garrison at the time was under the command of Captain (local Major) A. J. Chapman, P.S.C., Royal Dublin Fusiliers, and consisted of companies drawn from different regiments, and disposed as follows : on North Hill, one company Royal Lancasters, one company York and Lancasters, and one company Middlesex Regiment, the whole under the command of Captain Sandbach, Royal Lancaster Regiment ; in the town, one company York and Lancasters and one company Royal Lancasters ; on East Hill, one company York and Lancasters, under Lieutenant Ashton. There was also half a company of the Fifth Divisional Mounted Infantry, under Captain Rowley, Dorsetshire Regiment, quartered at the west end of the town, and on North Hill there was a 12-pounder naval gun, with a section R.G.A., under Lieutenant E. N. Tandy.

“ From the date of the attack on Vryheid, the Utrecht garrison took extra precautions ; half the

men invariably slept in their boots, and the rest of the garrison stood to arms from 2 a.m. until daylight, the men obtaining their necessary rest and sleep during the day. The mounted infantry horses were, after nightfall, moved into a donga running down from North Hill, and the majority of the men took up a position on one of the lower slopes of the hill.

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

"On the morning of Christmas Eve a letter arrived for the District Commissioner of Utrecht (Major Graham, 5th Lancers) from a Russian officer serving with the Boers, who signed himself Poderowsky, Kapt. Russian Imperial Army. The letter demanded that a supply of whisky, coffee and sugar should be sent out to Blood River Farm (Piet Uys) on the Belelasberg, by six the same evening, and threatened that, if this demand were not complied with, an attack would be made on the night of the 24th or 25th. The Russian added that no doubt all would like a quiet Christmas, and that therefore Major Graham had better send out what was wanted. Needless to say no notice was taken of the letter.

"As the intelligence also brought in information that an attack was impending, all were prepared for it.

"Major Chapman, after careful consideration, decided to alter for the night his entire dispositions, and as the usual line of defence was really

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

too extended for the two companies in the town, he decided to draw it in.

"After dark, therefore, the two companies left the old outpost line marked O on the sketch, and took up an inner position as follows: at the west end half a company York and Lan-



PLAN OF UTRECHT.

casters round the stores (S), the other remaining half company in new trenches on the edge of the town overlooking the donga; on the east a half company Royal Lancasters round the chief stores, with their front quite clear, and the remainder placed so as to watch and guard the entrances to the town on the north side. A



party was also intrenched in the cemetery (C) at the extreme east. The reserve, with whom was the O.C., was in a position near the Landrost's office (L), with a firing line covering the vacated trenches.

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

"Nothing happened on the night of the 24th, but at nine on the night of the 25th a listening post near the drift over the donga on the Vryheid road came in and reported Boers in the donga; at the same time he stated that he had seen mounted men and a wagon come round the detached hills, south of the town, just as it was getting dark. It afterwards turned out that what was heard in the donga was really a mob of cattle, driven down by the Boers to clear away some barbed wire entanglements placed there.

"The presence of the Boers had considerably upset the Christmas dinner, but the long-expected attack did not take place till 2 a.m. on the 26th, when shots were heard on East Hill, and almost at the same time a violent fusillade broke out against the town.

"The Boers began by rushing the empty trenches and pouring a volley into them. Finding no one there, they were obviously disconcerted, and did not appear to know quite where to go. However, they advanced against the supply stores, cheering and calling out. Here they were met by well-directed volleys and gained no ground.

"The attack on the town itself continued from

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

2 a.m. to about 3.30 a.m., and the whole time a heavy fire was kept up into the town, being chiefly directed against the Landrost's office. Though nearly every house could show bullet marks next day, no one was hit. The inhabitants had previously received orders to proceed to the church in case of attack, and the majority complied with the order.

"The Boers brought into action a Martini Maxim gun, which was brought on the wagon reported by the observation post.

"At the same time a most determined and bold assault was made on East Hill. This is a precipitous rocky kopje: half the garrison of the hill was on a small plateau where the camp was, and the remainder on the top. The hill is very narrow and razor-edged at the top, and here there were four posts of six men each, and an officer, Second Lieutenant Hodson, was in command. The Boers attacked simultaneously from the left and right. They climbed up with sheep-skin wrapped round their feet, and captured a post of six men on the extreme left. This post was a little way down the spur, and was too far detached to receive any assistance from other posts. The Boers got all round it, and right above, and fired straight down into the men, wounding two. The firing, however, had put everyone on the *qui vive*, and as the Boers reached the summit of the hill, and advanced against the next post,

they were received with a warm fire. This post was under the command of a young lance-corporal (Corporal Hunter). Here the attack was completely checked. At the same time the next post on the hill kept up a fire down the south flank of the hill, and thus prevented the Boers from coming up that way. Though the Boers were only about twenty yards from Corporal Hunter's post, none of our men were hit.

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

"On the right also the Boer attack was equally well repulsed. Barbed wire had been placed round, but was unfortunately put too far off to be effective, and the attacking party cut it, and came on without their presence being discovered. This party was personally led by the Russian.

"As, however, the party got within about fifteen yards of the right-hand sangar, it was received with a well-directed volley, and loud groaning was heard in the darkness. Firing continued till daybreak, when the Boers retired on all sides, and by daylight nothing was seen of them.

"In the morning several dead horses were found opposite the town position, and one dead man, five carbines, a revolver, a packet of nitroglycerine, and several hats lay close to the right-hand sangar on East Hill. The men who were taken prisoners, and afterwards released, said several bodies were carried away by the Boers

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

up the Wakkerstrom road, and later reports state that there were in all between twenty and thirty casualties among the Boers attacking the town. Among those killed was the Russian captain. He was mortally wounded on East Hill, and was carried away, and died next day. He had had a foreboding of his fate, and had made some of his men promise that if he was hit they would not let him fall into the hands of the English.

"It transpired afterwards, through Dutch sources, that two commandos had been told off to attack North Hill, but that their leaders had shirked the attack at the last moment, and only a few shots were fired up there.

"Had the garrison been stronger in the town, and had the Boer strength been known more precisely, a counter-attack might have been most advantageously made from the east of the town position by a party advancing and taking up a position by the donga, where, as was afterwards discovered, the Boers had their horses and reserves.

"This assault on Utrecht is a good instance of a successful repulse of a bold attack, and also of the value of a complete variation of the disposition of the outposts.

"For his gallantry that night Lance-Corporal Hunter was specially promoted Corporal in army orders.

“Almost immediately after these events the detachment said good-bye to Utrecht. C Company left on December 27th, and in a few days’ time had reached Newcastle, and there took up posts at Signal Hill and Fort Haldane. Four days afterwards B and E Companies also left, the former going to Newcastle and the latter to garrison Umbana kopje, which covers the Buffalo Bridge.”

Attack on  
Utrecht,  
December,  
1900.

## CHAPTER VII

### WAKKERSTROM HILL

**W**HEN the York and Lancaster Regiment was split up by the departure of the three companies from Wakkerstrom on September 9th, the remainder had to face some rather rough times. The name of the bleak and lofty position which they had seized on the 7th was changed by them to York and Lancaster Hill, and was their home for nearly three months.

The almost complete isolation of the hill and the monotony of the daily routine—seeing no fresh faces, hearing little or no outside news—coupled with the necessity for constant vigilance against probable and improbable Boer attacks, rendered the life very wearing. Tinned rations, bully beef, and biscuits were brought up at stated intervals by the convoy from Volksrust, but our energetic Garrison Quartermaster, Lieutenant Duggan, was very successful in supplementing this uninteresting fare. The food difficulty was further increased at the beginning of the time by numerous surrenders from the out-

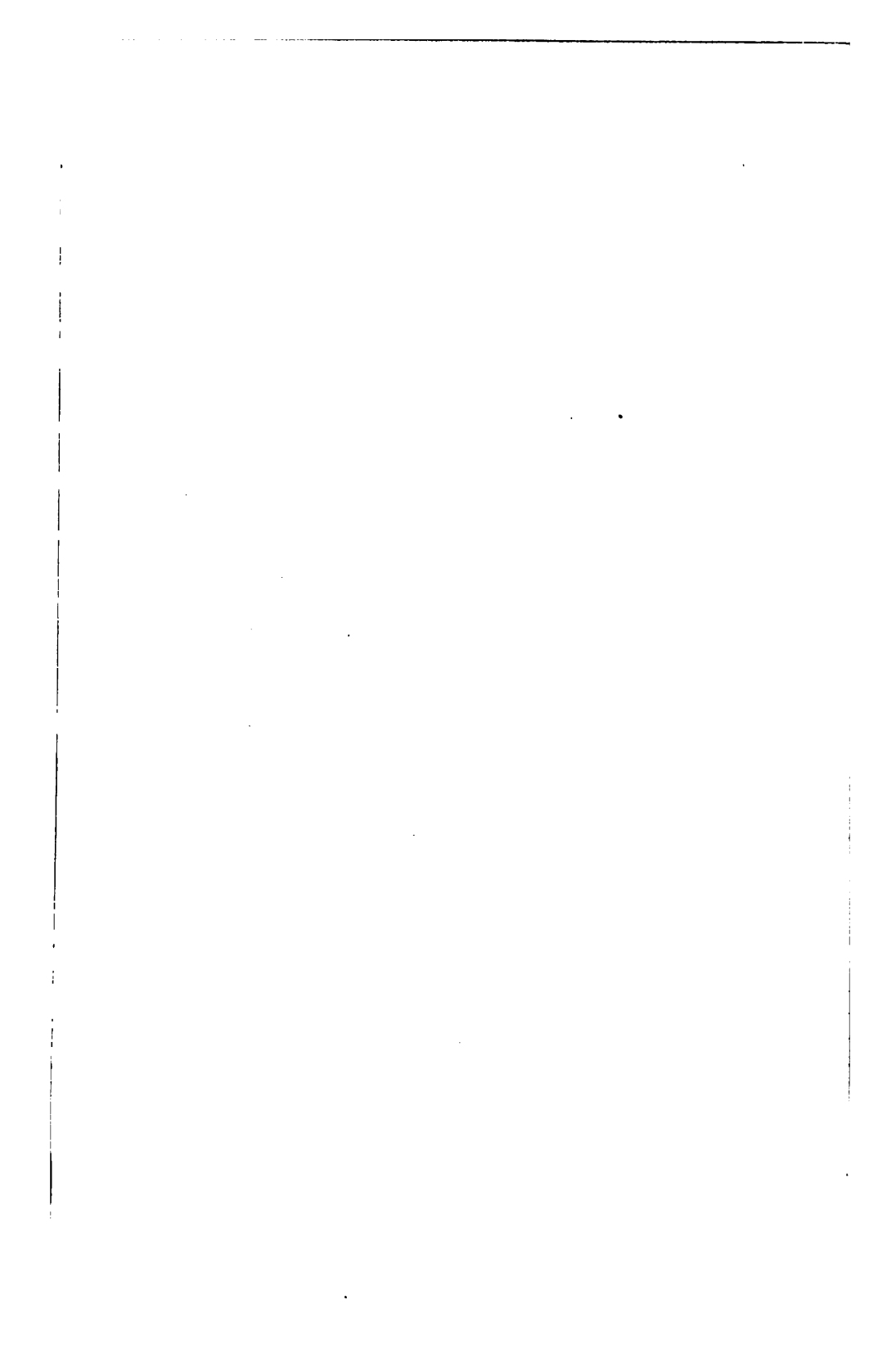
lying districts. Those who gave themselves up were half starved, having had to subsist on what mealies they could obtain, whilst their horses were simple studies in anatomy, owing to want of proper pasture, as all the grass was dry and burnt up. The townspeople of Wakkerstrom were themselves so short of provisions that they could not help in the matter; therefore bully and biscuit had to be doled out to the surrendered Boers. Short rations.

Had the enemy been so inclined they might have made our position on the hill almost untenable by cutting off the water-supply, situated some distance from camp, but as it was covered by our big gun, doubtless the Boers thought it best not to tamper with it. A direct attack on the hill would have been almost impossible, although rumours of the approach of a big commando for that purpose were from time to time brought in. The natives said Chris Botha constantly gave them to understand that he meant to take the hill, and that the town was practically his for the asking—no doubt the walls, had there been any, would have fallen down flat on his approach. As it was he never came within range of our guns. The Boers do not attack unless there is a good chance of success; they quickly learn what regiments they have to deal with, and what sort of an outlook is kept, and as York and Lancaster Hill, if vigil-

Bad weather. antly guarded, was almost impregnable, they did not attempt to take it. There were five companies on York and Lancaster Hill; G and A Companies, under Captain S. E. D. Webb, were on the northern hill; H and K Companies on the southern end, under Captain A. M. Haines; and one company with Head Quarters, under Major Halford, on the middle hill. Captain Webb's hill was about 1,600 yards, Captain Haines's fortifications about 1,500 yards, from Head Quarters.

The elements proved really worse enemies than the Boers. At an elevation of 6,400 feet, the hill was nearly always in the clouds in the winter, and neither the lovely views which were occasionally obtained, nor yet the fine sight of the clouds rolling into the valleys below, could prevent the cold winds and driving mist from penetrating everywhere. The dust-storms too were a plague, filling the tents with grit and dirt, but the rain when it came was a degree worse. In such a climate tents were but a poor protection, most of them getting badly torn by the gales; the ropes and hooks gave way, tent doors became useless, and the seams were so thin that the rain leaked through in all directions; some of the tents were actually blown down, others having the centre pole appearing through the top. Altogether the camp in general became the worse for wear.







TRENCH-DIGGING



SANGAR-BUILDING

Wakkerstrom Nek

*To face p. 109*

On October 8th there was a fall of snow, and less than a fortnight after that came a tremendous hailstorm. When the sun did occasionally manage to break through the dense mists, the heat was excessive, and a thunderstorm commonly ensued. The presence of ironstone made these storms more dangerous, and on one occasion two men were killed by lightning. Bad weather.

The day invariably commenced by standing to arms an hour before daybreak, followed by work at our fortifications until noon, with only a short interval for rest. Getting in wood and water, and distributing rations, formed part of the afternoon work, and as darkness at that time of the year came on early, and candles were a luxury which had to be reserved for special occasions, turning-in betimes was the rule.

The first part of the time on York and Lancaster Hill was occupied in sangar-building and making a road up the hill from Wakkerstrom, where one company of the regiment had taken up a post as garrison of the town, and was strongly intrenched in two forts which they had constructed. Sangar and road making did not, however, last much longer than a month, after which physical drill, marching round and round the spur of the hill, marching into the town and to the river for bathing, were instituted in order to give the men exercise and keep them fit. They also set to work building an oven of

Bad weather. biscuit tins and grass sods, with a bully tin for chimney. Besides this a recreation room was built, where the men could read and smoke, sheltered from the continual wind. The walls of this room were constructed of stones, the passages, seats, and tables made out of the ground, and the whole roofed in with branches and brushwood.

On September 19th the regiment had to pro-



A FIELD OVEN.

vide an escort for some wagons conveying prisoners to Volksrust, and also some other Boers who wished to leave Wakkerstrom. Half-way to Volksrust they were met and relieved by another escort, and after a half-hour's halt retraced their steps, getting a bathe in the river by the way. This little excursion was considered a pleasant change from the irksome daily routine on the hill.

The arrival on September 26th of a telegraph convoy which had come out to lay down

a wire between the hill and Volksrust was an agreeable surprise, and although the wire was often cut, the communication never remained broken for long, and was a help to our small isolated force. We used eagerly to look for the fortnightly convoy with rations and mails as a link with the outside world.

Wakkerstrom  
Town.

When we had been stationed about a fortnight at Wakkerstrom things began to settle down a little, and the shops in the small town reopened one by one, the owners trying to reap a harvest out of the stores which remained after the Boer raids. The so-called town of Wakkerstrom was not much more than a village, consisting of straggling houses, a large church, and a town hall.

The Volunteer Company which had joined the regiment in the preceding March received orders on October 15th to leave Wakkerstrom *en route* for home. To quote the words of one of them, they "marched twenty-three miles from Wakkerstrom to Volksrust, and there took the train. At Newcastle they stopped and were told that no orders had been received with regard to their movements, but they had better wait and have their dinner. They had dinner accordingly, and it was seven months before they got away."<sup>1</sup> It was found that guarding

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Col.-Serg. Duff, "Sheffield Daily Telegraph," January 27th, 1902.

On trek to  
Ingogo.

the line required more men than was at first anticipated, so our Volunteer Company was retained and split up into four detachments to hold the posts round about Newcastle.

The enemy's lights could frequently be plainly seen at night, signalling on the hills round Wakkerstrom, and on the night of October 20th some of them tried to rush the picket, but betrayed themselves when challenged by shouting "Freen, freen!" (friends) whereupon the sentry blazed away into the darkness, and the Boers retreated without having accomplished anything except wounding the sentry.

The month of November set in at Wakkerstrom with three days and nights of pouring rain, which drenched everything; even the waterproof sheets thrown over things inside the tents could not keep out the wet. On the 18th two companies of the regiment, under Captain Haines, left the hill as escort to a convoy returning to Volksrust. On the way thither they were attacked by some Boers who had lined the heights on either side of Wakkerstrom Nek, about five miles from the town, and just out of reach of the guns. From the advantageous position of cover which they had taken up the Boers poured lead down on the convoy from either side of the nek. It was a difficult task to get the oxen along, wounded and dying as some of them were, nor was it

pleasant for the escort to march under a heavy fire from an almost invisible enemy. But eventually the whole party got through the nek, with only one casualty, and a few oxen badly hit. The Boers refrained from pursuit, but remained in the position they had taken up, which was too strong to be attacked by the few mounted infantry who were acting as scouts to the convoy.

On trek to  
Ingogo.

The ambushade was, however, driven out by the South African Light Horse, who opened out, and without firing a shot charged up the hill straight at the enemy. They could not stand against this brave determined rush, but turned and fled, making good use of their horses, which they invariably kept handy for a hasty retreat. Luckily the S.A.L.H. had no casualties, in spite of the rough rocky ground over which they charged, and the hail of lead which the Boers were able to pour on them from their vantage-ground ; but they were firing at short range, when their fire is never so accurate.

From Volksrust our two companies proceeded to Ingogo, which was reached four days later ; and on November 27th the companies remaining at Wakkerstrom, having been relieved by the Dorset Regiment, moved off from their dreary hill. They left it with few regrets, and cheered as they went, so glad were they to leave it, as they all said, never to see it again : an instance of the hopeful disposition which,

On trek to  
Ingogo. backed by his powers of endurance and steady courage, makes the British soldier what he is.

They marched by way of Volksrust and Laing's Nek to Ingogo, and arrived there on Sunday, December 2nd. Ingogo is the next station north of Newcastle on the Natal railway, and the village then consisted of a few shanties and some trees, the latter quite a rarity in that desolate country, desolate more from lack of cultivation than from any fault on the part of nature.

On reaching this place the duty of guarding the railway from Newcastle on the south to Charlestown on the north was given to us, and we continued to hold this portion of the line for fully five months.



## CHAPTER VIII

### INGOGO POSTS

**D**URING our time at Wakkerstrom several events in the war worth recording had occurred. General Buller's operations in the northern Transvaal had been successful, and Lydenburg was entered on Thursday, September 6th, the same day on which York and Lancaster Hill was occupied. Five days later Kruger fled to Lorenzo Marques, there to await an opportunity for leaving the country to take refuge in Europe, which opportunity came to him on October 19th, when he sailed for Marseilles on board a Dutch man-of-war.

In less than a week from that date General Buller also took leave of South Africa, sailing from the Cape on Wednesday, October 24th, 1900. He had previously relinquished the command of the Natal Force, which on October 10th ceased to exist as a separate army, and formed from that time onward part of the general army in South Africa.

The day after General Buller sailed, the South African Republic was formally annexed by us

December,  
1899—  
December,  
1900.

under the name of the Transvaal Colony; and rather more than a month later, on November 29th, Lord Kitchener took over the supreme command, in preparation for the departure of Lord Roberts from Cape Town for England on December 11th, the anniversary of Magersfontein.

The outlook in December, 1900, was a very different one from that of December, 1899, but our ultimate success was much further off than anyone realized. As far back as June in that year Queen Victoria had telegraphed congratulations to General Buller on having cleared Natal, and yet in the middle of the following December the Boers were back in Dundee, and were also making a raid into Cape Colony. This being the case, those to whom the duty of guarding our lines was intrusted had to be more vigilant than ever, and although the Ingogo Posts were a distinct improvement on York and Lancaster Hill, constant watchfulness had to be exercised against possible attacks from the many hostile Boers who were in the neighbourhood, ready and eager to take advantage of any slackness on our part.

On arriving at Ingogo the regiment was split up into detachments, which were stationed at various posts on either side of the railway. At Newcastle one company was disposed round the town, part being posted at Fort Amiel on the

northern side. Windsor Castle, a spot two miles from Newcastle, on the north-east of the line, was held by a half-company; a whole company, under Captain Haines, being posted on Umbana Hill, to the east of the Buffalo river; a half-company on Partridge Hill, north-west of Umbana; and another half at Coetzee's Drift, on the Buffalo. One company held Gordon Hill, to the west of Ingogo, and another was split up to guard the line running from Ingogo station to Mount Prospect, one more under Captain Halford having to hold and fortify Laing's Nek and garrison Charlestown. To the west of the railway the posts were Signal Hill, about three miles north of Newcastle, held by half a company, a whole one being divided between Botha's Post and the Coliseum, the latter place the site of the old battlefield of nearly twenty years ago.

York and  
Lancaster  
posts,  
December,  
1900.

Later on a post was taken up at the foot of Majuba Hill, near O'Neill's Farm, where the wounded were taken after the disastrous engagement of 1881, when General Colley and many other British soldiers lost their lives and were buried in the farmer's garden. In the house, the table on which the Convention of 1881 was signed was preserved, together with the chairs used by Generals Wood and Joubert, and the rest of those who affixed their signatures to the deed.

O'Neill is very proud of the fact that on

Post at foot of  
Majuba Hill.

Majuba Day, 1881, his house was turned into a hospital for the wounded "rooineks," and that in his garden some of them found their last resting-place. The grave of General Colley—made prominent by a monument—is on a hill above No. 2 Reversing Station, some miles east of the house of O'Neill, who points it out with even more exultation than he was wont to display when saying, in a voice tingling with pride, "as far as you can see is mine." This is a good instance of an ambition common amongst the Boer farmers, who amass land, not for any useful purpose, but for the selfish one of isolation, so that they may remain undisturbed by even the smoke of another farm in the distance: an ambition in strong contrast with that of the French peasant, who craves "a good little plot" surrounded by other plots, "*où on peut entendre se moucher le voisin.*" The Boers would find it impossible to understand the dictum that "property has its duties as well as its rights," and have, in truth, no sense of the responsibilities attached to ownership. Yet now they ask why they have lost the country in which they settled—not realizing that the laws of progress and civilization are inexorable, and, when neglected, the civilized world looks for a champion to avenge the slight. No monopoly of the advantages of climate, soil, and mineral wealth can be held for ever by an idle race who

refuse to gather the wealth which nature has thrown at their feet. The demand for justice and legislation was answered by corruption and oppression; the spirit of improvement and progress was checked in every way, and the governing bodies were unmindful of all else but their own ends and base gains.

Christmas,  
1900.

A sharp outlook had to be maintained throughout the whole of Christmas Day, 1900, which in consequence was spent very quietly, General Hildyard being fearful of allowing any festivities, lest the Boers should take advantage of the occasion to attack us. There was an alarm on the last day of the year, when 300 Boers collected near Mount Prospect were said to be bent on mischief, so we prepared for them, and saw the old year out and the new year in sleeping in the trenches.

New Year's Day, 1901, was celebrated by a shooting match between the men of the regiment and some of the colonial farmers in the neighbourhood, and we were lucky enough to defeat the farmers, who were out of practice.

The beginning of January, 1901, was not marked by any very stirring events, but towards the end of the month a strike occurred amongst some of the mule leaders and drivers, owing to one shilling a day being cut off their pay. They had been so long overpaid that they had grown more or less independent, having saved up

Kaffir strike,  
January, 1901.

enough money to start a kraal and buy cattle. The height of their ambition is to watch their cattle grazing and their women folk working and hoeing in the mealie fields ; and when a man has all he wants there is scant inducement for him to work for more. The Dutchmen as a rule paid their Kaffirs at the rate of ten shillings a month, so it was hardly surprising that the natives grew demoralized by receiving as much as £4 10s. a month from us for the not very hard task of looking after mules. It has been estimated that during the greater part of eighteen months these wages were paid to probably over 100,000 men.<sup>1</sup> But now the fiat had gone forth that a retrenchment must be made, the economy was naturally resented by those on whom it was practised, and many of the mule leaders and drivers objected to sign the new compact. A compromise was at length arrived at, allowing those who refused the reduced wages to go for a time to Pietermaritzburg, where they were kept at Government expense ; at the end of a month, all their money, destined to have been spent on kraals and cattle, having been squandered, the strikers were only too glad to return to work at £3 a month. Although so well paid they were a good deal of trouble to the transport officers, as it was almost impossible to make them understand that everything, even down to the smallest buckle

<sup>1</sup> Lord Lovat on "An Efficient Army," Oct. 25th, 1902.

in the harness, had to be accounted for, and that the worn-out things must be produced at the Ordnance Store before new ones would be issued. This regulation was particularly difficult to enforce when, as often happened, an order came to move off at a moment's notice, for then the old things which there had not been time to give in or replace were nearly certain to be left behind, there being only room on the wagons for absolute necessities—one day's rations, and one coat and blanket for each man. Kaffir strike.

Towards the end of January barbed wire entanglements fastened to iron stakes at regular intervals had been started as a protection against the posts being rushed on dark nights, of which there were many. In some places the extra precaution was taken of hanging on the wires tins with loose stones inside, which would rattle if anyone stumbled against the entanglement, and the wires were crossed as much as possible to increase the strength of the whole. The roads and drifts were also wired up, so that riding about at night must have proved extremely unpleasant work for the Boers. Even our own officers, when going the round of their posts in the early morning, sometimes got caught in the wires, and their boots suffered especially from these encounters.

On January 23rd we heard the sad news of the death of her Majesty Queen Victoria, and

Death of  
Queen  
Victoria.

ten days later a memorial service was held at Volksrust. One of the men was overheard remarking that he wondered "who would be King in England now," adding, "I suppose the Prince is too old to take on the post"—an opinion savouring strongly of army ideas of age limit and superannuation.

Trains were continually passing through Ingogo station laden with things for up country, and at times conveying as many as 1,000 horses daily. On one occasion some friends of the Boers tried to assist those on commando by forwarding to them shells and ammunition concealed in cases labelled as containing condensed milk tins, but the suspicions of one of the station-masters being aroused, he obtained leave to open a tin. As he only received the necessary sanction after the train had got beyond his station, he jumped on a spare engine and went up to the next station, where he caught up the train with its contraband freight, and thus by his energy and promptness the plot was defeated.

On Saturday, February 9th, General Hildyard paid a visit of inspection to our defences running from Ingogo Drift to O'Neill's Farm, and expressed himself satisfied with the fortifications, at the same time giving instructions how to improve and strengthen them.

Owing to the great heat, flies and mosquitoes were very troublesome, and locusts were occa-



sionally seen moving over the country like a cloud, whitening the ground wherever they alighted, and doing terrible damage. One Kaffir, in describing a huge swarm of these pests which had eaten up all his crops, said that "after a few days there is an end to them, but there is no end to the Majomies—they keep coming and coming up from the ships at sea." "Majomies" means "machines," the Kaffir name for soldiers, and the arrival of more and more reinforcements had impressed them with the idea that the British army was inexhaustible.

Heat and  
drought.

Up to the 17th of February the heat was excessive, and the rains kept off, much to the distress of the farmers round Ingogo, one of whom declared that this second year of drought meant a loss to him of £50 a month in fruit alone. The Buffalo river, usually very high at that season, was now so low that foot passengers could ford it. But on the 18th the rains began in earnest, and in a few days the river rose to such a height that even the cavalry could not get across, and the rations for Gordon Hill had to be conveyed by means of a basket swung on a cable and pulled across the river. The cable had been previously erected with a view to supplying the garrison on the east of the Buffalo, in case the river should rise and remain in flood for some time, and so cut off wheel communication.

Regimental  
pets.

The regiment had acquired two pets, one a dog named Pom-pom. The other, a meer-cat, a most intelligent little beast, would follow like a dog until tired, when she would run up the nearest ant-hill, sit up and take her bearings, and then trot home to camp. She showed a marked dislike to Kaffirs, always flying at their legs and trying to bite them, and when Pom-pom was asleep she would take a mean advantage of him by biting his ears, an attention he deeply resented.

Pom-pom, a liver and white pointer, was a friend to all in the regiment, and was always made welcome in any tent which he elected to favour by his presence for the night, no matter how crowded the tent might be, even to the extent of having eighteen soldiers already in it; and in times of short rations Pom-pom was the last to suffer. He joined the regiment at Venter's Spruit, where he delighted everybody by his fearlessness, barking at the shells, and snapping and running at the bullets when he saw them striking the ground. The Brigadier promised to present him with a collar if he came to England with the regiment; but, alas! after living with us for about a year, he either strayed or was stolen. He was as regular as the Sergeant-Major in seeing every party fall in, and made a practice of attending every parade and guard during the day.

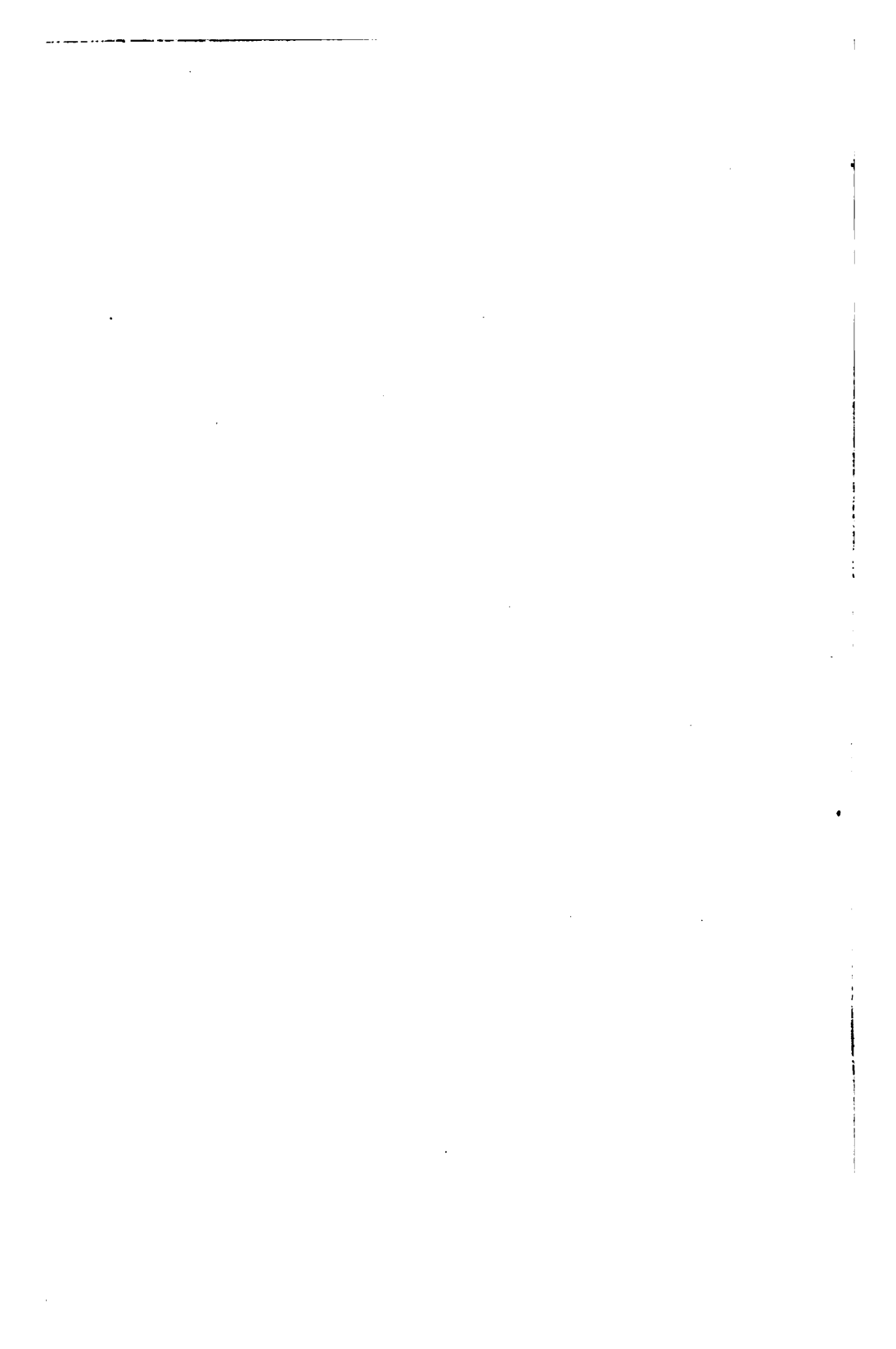


GETTING CUR LETTERS



THE MEER-CAT  
Klip River Post

*To face p. 124*



During this time a good many surrendered men with their families went through Ingogo to Charlestown, where a laager was formed for them. When their wagons could not be got through the drift they had to be lightened by unloading, and a bridge put up for the loads to be taken across by hand ; at such times our soldiers used good-naturedly to help by carrying the babies and boxes. Hopes of peace.

On the last day of February hopes of peace once more dawned, and Lord Kitchener met General Botha, the latter having expressed a wish for an interview with a view to peace negotiations. Unhappily these negotiations ended in failure, as previous ones had done, being broken off by General Botha sixteen days later.

## CHAPTER IX

### ELANDSBERG

**I**N order to cope with the mobility of the Boer commandos, a system of "sweeping" columns had been organized, which necessitated a good deal of convoy work and convoy-guarding. Towards the middle of March a company of the York and Lancaster Regiment under Captain Swanston came back to Ingogo to recruit. They had been out taking part in Burn-Murdoch's attempt to get a convoy through to General French, who was then executing a manœuvre that was almost a long drive. It took nearly eight weeks, beginning at Johannesburg, and ending at Dundee. The men, on their return, were in rags and tatters, with scarcely a sole to their boots, having experienced a very rough and rainy time. They had forded rivers breast high, slept in wet clothes on wet ground without the shelter of tents, and rations had run short and had to be supplemented by what could be got on the march. As the cavalry always acted as advanced guard, there was usually little enough in the shape of food left for the infantry,

and to cook even what they did find was a problem, for fuel was very scarce and usually very damp. In fact, during the twenty-six days they were out, the men and everything they had became wet through, with no chance of getting dry.

Captain  
Swanston's  
account,  
March, 1901.

Captain Swanston's interesting account of the trek is as follows : " ' It will only be for four days at the most.' This I learned from the Adjutant as, in response to an urgent telephone message telling me to appear at Head Quarters with forty men at once, I inquired the nature of the job for the carrying out of which I had been done the honour of being selected.

" It was unfortunate that my services should be required on this particular day, as I had arranged to go into Newcastle that morning, and, with a view to appearing extra respectable in that city, had donned a complete new outfit of khaki drill, just arrived from England, and particularly unsuitable for the cold nights and damp mornings which one experiences on the Berg about that time. However, had I not my valise with two blankets and a greatcoat? What did it matter for only 'four days'?

" By nine o'clock my party had been made up to about a hundred men, and two wagons were loaded with such luxuries as preserved meat, biscuit, and rolls of blankets. With instructions to go to Umbana and there await further

March to  
Umbana.

orders, and with a final jest from the doctor to the effect that I must have a lot of influence somewhere as I managed to secure all the good billets, I started off along the dusty road.

"It is a tedious march to Umbana, which is roughly about seventeen miles from Ingogo, over flat country on which the road winds about like a Chinese cracker, necessitated by the numerous dongas which make all attempts at a short cut out of the question. In one of these dongas a wagon turned turtle and the mules succeeded in breaking the harness to such an extent that nearly two hours elapsed before we could get under way again. Moreover, my pony—always of an inquisitive nature—took upon himself to descend one of the banks of Donga Spruit and sank up to his shoulders in the quicksand at the bottom; however, by means of ropes, boards, whips and yells, he was once more restored to *terra firma*, and the journey resumed.

"Just on coming to the Suspension Bridge (one of the few bridges the Boers never destroyed), I encountered a company of Dublin Fusiliers riding on wagons and cursing their fate; there were also rattling along the road guns, cavalry, ambulances and wagons, all making for the same destination.

"At Umbana I received orders to encamp for the night and to proceed with the Dublin





**CONVOY WORK**  
An enforced halt



Fusiliers at 5.30 the next morning as rearguard to a convoy to Utrecht. Wet weather.

"Just at this time the clouds, which had been gathering since four o'clock, collected in a huge mass, and large drops of rain began to fall, increasing in numbers every moment till, with a brilliant flash and a mighty roar, we found ourselves enveloped in a thunderstorm—the first rain for so many weeks beating down in fury on the scorched grass and dusty roads, causing men and horses to huddle together close to the wagons, and to bend their heads in silence till the heavens should have vented their wrath. And then, just as a child who has been crying looks up with a smile through his tears to one who has consoled him, so the setting sun broke gradually through the lessening drops, and for a few moments smiled on Umbana and her wet occupants ere he sank to rest behind the hills.

"The next hour was occupied in seeing that the men settled down on their allotted camping-ground, and, having seen them ensconced in their little bivys made of blankets propped up by rifles, I posted my sentries and all work was over for the day.

"Just at this moment Wilson turned up with an invitation to dine with Haines and himself. They occupied a post on Umbana Hill, about half a mile off, and the way was wet and

On the way to  
Utrecht.

muddy; but the fare was of the best that could be procured, so I was repaid for my journey thither.

"At 5 a.m. next day I was sitting in the open with a billy-canteen of hot coffee, and my mouth full of bread and jam, and in ten minutes' time we were off to the cross-roads where I met the Dublin Fusiliers. Captain Swift, who was in charge of this company, and I laid down in the sun and watched the wagons passing, and smoked pipes and cigarettes, and more pipes and cigarettes, till we began to get alarmed, and for the first time a suspicion of the truth seized me. I felt that we were in for a longer time than I was led to suppose. At about 10.30 the arrival of the ambulances told us that we were about to start, and shortly after we were off.

"Oh, that road to Utrecht! Flat as the palm of your hand, but winding about in such an insane fashion that you seemed to make no progress whatever. We reached the hills, behind which the conductors said Utrecht lay, but not a sign of a town was to be seen! We could still see hundreds of wagons ahead of us plodding away, and darkness was coming on. Everyone who could push on did so. There went the gallant guns and hospital of the rearguard with a cheery 'Good night, old boy. Arrived at last.' But the way was blocked, and the

weary infantryman had to halt again and again while the yoke was adjusted or the wagon released, and darkness set in without so much as a gleam of light from the town we were making for.

On the way to  
Utrecht.

"I now made arrangements with Swift to ride on and find out where the infantry were to camp, and with much difficulty managed to worm my way along the narrow road beside the wagons. In the town I met a Staff Officer who pointed out our camping-ground, and by eight o'clock we had finished our coffee and all turned into our blankets. It was a lovely night, and, but for the snores which were carried across the still air, one might have imagined oneself lying alone on the veldt.

"Next morning at five wagons arrived for our blankets, and I was informed by a Staff Officer that, owing to the late hour that we turned in the previous night, it had been considerably arranged that we and the Dublins should once more form the rearguard, so that we might rest while the convoy was getting off. As we had to pack our blankets and kettles on to the wagons at once, we hurried over breakfast and then settled down to await further orders. These arrived about noon, when we were told to march to the foot of East Hill and remain there. It was very hot and dusty, and some of the sympathetic inhabitants came out with jugs full of

Getting up  
East Hill.

lemonade for the men ; this impressed me, as it was the first time I had seen anything given to Tommy without money or some sort of recompense being expected. At the other side of the town we came upon the convoy parked in rows of fifteen wagons at the bottom of the hill up which, as far as one could distinguish it, the long string was winding. The Dublin Fusiliers were sent forward as flank-guard, and I was left alone. Now came another long halt, during which a considerate doctor asked me into his ambulance, and produced tea and biscuits which cheered me up somewhat ; but, as the sun crept lower and lower behind the town, and there were still two more rows of wagons to be inspanned, I foresaw a weary night of it. Just as darkness set in the last wagon got off, and we followed mournfully in rear. A cool breeze had sprung up, and, with a sigh, I thought of those greatcoats which were with the baggage at the head of the column.

“ We moved very slowly, about fifty yards at a time and then a long halt, but all were pretty cheerful at the idea of moving at all ; this cheerfulness began to wear off somewhat after the first two hours, and I noticed one or two sit down on the roadside during the numerous stops, and, one by one, at each halt the number of men standing became less. I myself was beginning to feel slightly weary, for after a

few hours the incessant 'Umbagi' and cracking of whips, followed almost immediately by the long whistle and 'Anoo' of the Kaffirs, began to jar a bit, and before long I was following Tommy's example, first sitting by the roadside, and later right in the middle of the dusty road. My sleepy old pony seemed to think me perfectly mad for springing up and down like a jack-in-the-box at a time when all ponies and men should be sleeping peacefully ; I therefore handed him over to one of the water-boys and saw no more of him for the time being.

Getting up  
East Hill.

"I will not attempt to describe further the unpleasantness of that night—pressing on for a few yards with weary steps, and then halting and falling on the road till the wagons began to move again.

"At dawn we found ourselves well up the hill, on a road bounded by mimosa, through the gaps in which we looked down some hundreds of feet into a huge valley full of cactus, and with here and there a deserted and roofless farmhouse. As the sun came out we all felt fit again and went on cheerfully till one o'clock, when we came on our camp at Knight's Farm ; here we halted and started to boil our kettles and eat our biscuits.

"I went off to the farm to report our arrival, and was told that the column would move off again in about an hour, and that my company

East Hill. would form the advance guard, so that we should get into camp, which was only six miles off, first, and have a chance of a little rest ; we therefore slept for a short time and then made for the cross-roads at which the cavalry had already assembled, and very shortly we were off again.

“ Things now began to assume a more cheerful aspect, and a conductor pointed out to me the hill, which appeared quite close, where we were to halt for the night. - Just then a Staff Officer rode up and told me that the advance guard was to occupy a hill on the left of the road until the convoy should have passed, and then follow in rear of it ! This was discouraging, and all thoughts of getting into camp in anything like reasonable time vanished as, with a feeling of despondency, we started off for our new position.

“ On reaching the top of the hill I divided my company up into posts, and then took up my position on a high rock from which I could see the road along which we had come, occupied by a long string of wagons and troops as far as my eyes could carry. On my left I saw the foremost wagons wheeling into lines and outspanning, while numerous little wreaths of smoke showed the spot where we should halt for the night. By five o'clock I could see the last of the wagons, and we were shortly afterwards



relieved by a company of the Middlesex who would occupy the position for the night. We staggered down to the camp, drew our rations, and were shortly afterwards fast asleep. Bad weather.

"I woke early the next morning, as we were to set off at daybreak. A fine rain was falling and everything was enveloped in a thick mist; my servant brought me a canteen full of tea and some jam and biscuits, which I ate while my valise was rolled up and the blankets packed into the wagons. Major Savile, who was in charge of the infantry, came up and told me he did not think it likely that we should start till the mist had lifted, so that we had better remain where we were till further orders. He was grotesquely attired, in gum-boots, a sodden greatcoat and, under his helmet, a Balaclava cap, which gave him the appearance of a North Sea fisherman. He also had had a bad night, as, owing to the mist, he had been unable to find his valise, so had to lie down as I now beheld him.

"Instead of lifting, the mist and rain grew thicker, and at nine o'clock I saw the wagons out-span again. By this time I was pretty well wet through, but managed to obtain a little shelter by huddling up with a dozen men under the sail cloth at the side of one of the wagons. At two we received orders to move again, as the mist appeared to be lifting in places, although

**Bad weather.** the rain continued, and we moved off to the rendezvous. Here we all remained for close on an hour, and were then told we must return again to our camp for the night, and be ready to start next morning. I got some tea and bully-beef and climbed into my wet blankets.

“During the night and the following day the fine rain continued to fall, but early in the afternoon we were able once more to push forward. It was very wet and difficult to march on account of the mud, in which some of the wagons stuck badly; but we did not go far, and by five o'clock I had taken up an outpost position close to a river which was very much swollen and fell in a cascade like a miniature Niagara. The rain was now falling heavily, and the ground was covered with water, and I cast about for a spot on which to place my sodden bed, finally selecting two large rocks which stood side by side with just sufficient space between them for me to lie; this, with a mackintosh sheet stretched above me, appeared to be the most protected couch I could find, and my valise was placed here accordingly. I then took another walk round my posts, wading through the water which had covered the ground, and with the greatest difficulty kept my feet in the liquid mud.

“When I got back to my sumptuous quarters, I discovered that my roof had fallen in, owing

to the weight of water, and a small cataract was pouring into my bed, but this did not appear of much importance, for it was soaked through before; so I rolled myself up with the mackintosh sheet over my head, and before long commenced to steam like a boiling pudding. But the sound of the rain beating down on the sheet on my face had a soothing effect, and before long I was asleep.

Sumptuous  
quarters.

"I was awakened shortly by my servant, who was standing over me with a camp kettle containing something that appeared heavy and rattled. On removing the lid I perceived a lot of steam and was conscious of a not unsavoury smell. I asked him what it was. He replied, 'A 'ead.' As soon as I recovered from the shock of this announcement (for in England the sight of a sheep's head in a butcher's shop has made me feel queer for the rest of the day), I told him I was not hungry; but I was finally persuaded—I should rather say compelled—to drink some of the watery gravy poured into a tin cup, and felt all the better for it. After this, I went round my posts once more and then back to bed again, where I remained till day-break, when we were prepared to start once more.

"Some wagons arrived and tried to cross the river, but, owing to its swollen state and the strength of the current, very few reached the op-

Elandsberg. posite bank. I managed during the day to get half my company across, some on light wagons, others preferring to walk with a rope to keep them steady, and we formed a guard for the few wagons on the other side.

"Another uncomfortable day and night, during which the steady downpour did not cease, and in the morning a few more wagons managed to cross.

"It was now decided, as far as I could gather, to push forward what wagons we had, and I was detailed as escort. We marched all the afternoon up a steep hill down which the water and liquid mud were trickling, sometimes up to the top of our boots ; but everyone was cheerful at the idea of moving, and just before dark we arrived at the further side of the Elandsberg.

"Once more we had to sleep without shelter in the pouring rain which fell steadily for four days, during which time we were enveloped in a thick cloud ; moreover our supplies were cut down, and we were reduced to quarter rations, consisting of a few hard biscuits and a little coffee.

"We now moved down on to the level ground beyond the Elandsberg, and remained here for about a week, while the wagons ploughed their way through the thick mud, which was up to the axles of the wheels.

"There was a farmhouse close by, and I sent

my servant there to dry my blankets by the fire; he returned in the evening with a dry bed, but, alas! a hole burnt through each blanket and the valise. I succeeded in getting hold of a dilapidated Cape cart, and with some canvas off an old wagon managed to make myself a very passable tent. Flocks of sheep were driven into camp each morning, and all were allowed to take as many as they wished. I will not describe the horrible scene; suffice it to say that Tommy, when he is hungry, is not overburdened by feelings of humanity or tenderness.

Crossing the  
Pongola.

"On reaching the Pongola river, we found it so swollen that the only way to cross it was to put the men on to wagons which rushed down the steep approach, and by means of this impetus were carried over to the further bank. Just as I had got my pony into the river, one of these wagons came rushing on to the top of me, and I got jammed between the two leading mules, who luckily did not succeed in stamping me under, but carried me safely to the other side, where I managed to get clear again.

"We had now a long march to a position on the right of the column, and retired to bed hungry.

"Next day we were informed that we should stay here some time, and, as the sun was shining, the ground was strewn with clothing, and

Elandsberg. men were busy cutting up some sheep which had just been driven in. I was sleeping peacefully under the shade of a cart when an orderly arrived with a slip of paper on which was written: 'You will proceed without delay to Pongola river, where further orders await you.'

"With a sigh, we prepared to move again, and after a long march found ourselves at Uitkamst, a tumble-down farm then used as a hospital. Three more days were spent here, and then we moved back to the foot of Elandsberg. I had a large defensive line to occupy, and was supplied with picks and shovels in order to make works; this was difficult, as it was raining hard day and night, but we completed the works in about ten days.

"General French was sending in a large number of wagons with refugee families, and they were all parked at the foot of the hill, waiting till everything had come down before they might go up. They formed quite a little town, placed as they were in rows forming streets in which children played, women gossiped, and the old men sat at their doors and smoked their pipes.

"It was here that I met Captain Pitt of the Royals, whose cheerful society (to say nothing of a store of provisions) did much to keep up my somewhat drooping spirits. He was living

in a broken-down wagon at the bottom of the hill, and his duties seemed to lie in regulating the traffic up and down the Elandsberg, much as the Metropolitan policeman does the traffic in the City. At the wave of his hand long lines of ox-wagons were brought to a standstill, while a pontoon section (resembling very much a procession in aid of the National Lifeboat Society) ploughed slowly through the mud. Elandsberg.

“How often do I look back on those evenings we spent together under a leaking buck sail, wet to the skin, drinking coffee out of a tin mug, and eating hot rolls baked in an ant-hill. The chef at the Carlton can never produce food so acceptable or thoroughly appreciated as were the culinary efforts of that big, painstaking trooper of the 1st Royal Dragoons.

“I must not bore the reader with more, as our journey back to Newcastle contained little of interest. The weather was fine, our clothes in rags, and our boots worn through; and when we arrived at Ingogo we presented a very different spectacle from when we set out.

“Such is about all I can remember of our trek over the Elandsberg. I have not attempted to describe anything from a tactical point of view, nor is it for me to criticize those who know better than I, for I saw nothing, and knew nothing of what was going on away from the small

Return to  
Newcastle.

duties I had to perform. There were the usual alarms and standing-to all night, the usual galloping forward and steady pounding of the guns for hours, the usual stories of encounters and captures; but I saw no dead or wounded except the poor fellows sent in by French from the different columns.

"It was an unpleasant time on account of the bad weather and want of supplies, but it is these little discomforts which go to make one appreciate more fully the happiness and luxury of the piping times of peace."



## CHAPTER X

### A TREK WITH A CONVOY

ON Captain Swanston's return, another company was sent out under Captain Vickerman, who has kindly written an account of their trek on convoy duty to General French from Volksrust to Pietretief, which is given here.

"On March 13th, 1901, while occupying Botha's Post and the Coliseum, I received orders to hold myself in readiness to move off at an hour's notice, in relief of Captain Swanston's company, which had been out on convoy work for almost three weeks. Receiving final orders on the 15th to move into Head Quarters at Ingogo, I left Major Scholes and ten men to hold Botha's Post, five men being left at the Coliseum, and moved off with my company of about seventy strong, the number asked for. As it was growing dusk, I took what I had been told was a short cut across country, as the crow flies, which, however, proved to be anything but a short cut as the foot soldier walks. The recent heavy rains had made the ground like a ploughed field, and besides being very broken and rocky,

Volksrust,  
March, 1901.

it was covered with long grass, so that a fall every twenty yards was a certainty. But at last we heard the welcome challenge 'Halt!' from a sentry inside the wire entanglements of Head Quarters Camp.

"We bivouacked on Ingogo station platform, and on the following afternoon I entrained H Company for Volksrust, taking with me Second Lieutenant Corbyn as my subaltern.

"At Volksrust my men were mostly taken for guards and examining posts in and around the town, and I was told we should be sent out as infantry escorts to one of the next convoys with food and oats to General French. He was then operating in the Eastern Transvaal, and had made Pietretief his Head Quarters while waiting for fresh supplies, the lack of which hampered his movements, as his men were reduced to living on mealies, and he had no oats for his horses.

"We remained a fortnight at Volksrust doing garrison duties and acting as escorts to Boer prisoners, during which period my oxen had time to recruit from the fatigue of their late trek, and the rest was an advantage, as I had taken them over with the wagon from Captain Swanston's company. While we were at Volksrust, the place was reduced to the state of an Irish snipe bog by the continued rains, and the wagons sank axle-deep even in the main streets.

"On Saturday, March 30th, we struck our tents and started on trek to Pietretief. There was plenty of room in the wagon, so I took five tents and also three days' rations, which, as it afterwards turned out, was very fortunate.

Escorting  
a convoy.

"We left Volksrust in a heavy downpour of rain, the Wakkerstrom road looking like a ploughed track, and the surrounding veldt like a swamp. After a good deal of 'Ah! now, Scotchman' from the Kaffirs, and much cracking of whips, we got under weigh.

"I may here explain that the Kaffirs always have special names for their oxen, and each animal is trained to respond to his name, knowing well that disobedience in doing so will call forth a flogging; coming in at night, each ox has his own place against the disselboom and chain of the wagon, to which he goes of his own accord.

"The escort to this convoy of 200 wagons consisted of a section of the 13th Field Battery, two squadrons of the 5th Dragoon Guards and their Maxim gun, the Dublin Fusiliers Mounted Infantry Company, seventy men of H Company York and Lancaster Regiment, and thirty men of the Dublin Fusiliers, the whole under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel St. John Gore, 5th Dragoon Guards.

"We only made five miles the first day, and camped on a kopje almost due east of Volksrust

Escorting  
a convoy.

and just off the Wakkerstrom road. I posted my men on outposts as soon as it grew dark. The night was very dark, the rain still came down in torrents, and I was truly thankful I had brought tents.

"We were all up early next morning, and, thank goodness, it had stopped raining. As soon as the road had dried a little, and the cavalry patrols reported all clear, we got under weigh again, my company with the advanced guard in support of the cavalry.

"We halted about a mile and a half from Wakkerstrom Nek, the guns taking up a position, while the cavalry and mounted infantry scouted up to the heights on each side, and then occupied them, securing our safe passage through; this accomplished, we pushed on to Wakkerstrom, and out on to the 'Rocky' kopje due north of the town. There we outspanned and pitched our tents on the ground indicated to me by Major Marling, V.C., who was acting as Staff Officer to Colonel Gore. We had outposts as usual that night.

"Next morning, April 1st, we started early, as we had some very difficult country to pass through, and all uphill. We moved off in much the same order as on the previous day, until we came to the pass, a series of ravines commanded by high hills on either side; these the cavalry and mounted infantry occupied first, the guns

taking up position as usual to cover their advance. I was then ordered to send an officer and thirty men to relieve them on the first hill, and so on all the way up, until I had the whole of my men and the thirty Dublin Fusiliers holding the hill in small parties on the exposed flank, the guns moving on and taking up position after position.

Difficult  
country.

"The mounted troops dismounted and took up positions on the summit of the pass; I saw a few scattered parties of the enemy through my glasses, but they made no attempt even to snipe us. I received an order to send an officer and party to mend the road near the top of the pass; this I did, and finally I withdrew my men, kopje by kopje, and followed the convoy as their rearguard. Once on the top of the pass we were not long in marching our company round Panama Camp, under the guns of Mount Castrol, a fortified post held by four companies of the Devons and two naval 12-pounders.

"We were now getting into a very mountainous difficult country, intersected by deep ravines, Mount Castrol being our last fortified post.

"Colonel Gore told me our movements for the next day were uncertain, as he wanted all my men and the Dublins for road-mending, the next drift and the road on each side of it being almost impassable; so early next morning I sent Corbyn and thirty-five men, under an R.E. officer,

Mount  
Castrol.

to commence repairing the above-mentioned place.

"At 12 noon, just as I was going with a party to relieve the working party, I received orders to strike my camp and move off with the escort baggage and wagons at once; this I did, and picked up Corbyn and his men at the drift. The reason for this hurried move was that Major Glynn, General Bullock's Staff Officer, had galloped back ten miles with an order to push on and join the General, who had had a brush with the Boers, so he wanted us all to keep together and take on the two convoys of about 400 wagons. The last convoy had been sniped, and had a fight or two on its way out to Pietretief, and on its return journey fought a rearguard action every day, so we were looking forward to stirring times.

"We got off well, but the morning rain had been so heavy that, in spite of the excellent work done by Corbyn and his men, each wagon that descended the steep ravine (which was almost an angle of 45°) made the road worse; finally a wagon overturned in the drift, and another sank over the axle and had to be dragged out by three spare teams of oxen. This blocked the rest of the convoy, and, as there was no chance of reaching our next camping-ground that day, Colonel Gore decided to camp just under the nek, close to the fortified post of

Castrol. It was very chilly and raining hard, added to which the newly-made graves of some poor fellows of the mounted infantry, who had been killed on escort to another convoy, did not tend to make matters more cheery, and as we joined the gunners on the nek they greeted us with 'Cheer up, we shall all be dead soon!'

"However, I galloped back, and succeeded in getting our wagon along with the aid of a spare team of oxen, although there was an anxious moment before it cleared the drift. The men soon got the tents up and trenches dug round them, and it was then my reserve rations came in acceptably; we were cut off from the food part of the convoy, so the other troops had to wait for a meal until very late that night. We had only made about two miles that day, which was very poor progress.

"It still rained heavily next day, April 3rd, and my company and the Dublins had more road-mending to do, often enough in places where dead oxen were pretty thick on the ground. As soon as the faulty places had been patched up the convoy moved off once more, this time all downhill; but, owing to the awful state of the ground, progress was very slow, and we did not do more than four miles that day. The cavalry and mounted infantry occupied the kopjes commanding our line of march, and were

Peninsular  
Hill.

relieved by the Dublins on the left flank and the York and Lancaster on the right.

"Colonel Gore, seeing that it was impossible to reach General Bullock's camp that night, 'parked' the convoy wagons on General Dartnall's old camping-ground. I left a section on the kopje due east and immediately above the camp, the Dublins having a non-commissioned officer and ten men on their kopje due north, commanding the camp from that side, our position being also still covered by the naval 12-pounder on Mount Castrol.

"We were on outpost as usual during the night, and moved off at six o'clock next morning. As we neared General Bullock's camp he began to march off, and I was ordered to send half my company to hold Peninsular Hill, and prevent sniping until the rear of General Bullock's convoy had got out of range, as the last convoy had been sniped from that hill. With my other half-company I pitched my camp in the line allotted to me, along the edge of a precipice, from which I could see small numbers of the enemy on the distant hills watching me. We were here joined by Major Lynch's convoy (Dorset Regiment), a third small supplementary one that had followed us from Volksrust.

"The rain had now ceased, and the welcome sun came out and dried our wet clothing. The roads too began to dry, and everyone cheered



up. After this, with the exception of one or two wet nights, we had no more rain to speak of.

Rearguard  
duty.

"Just as it was growing dusk our party returned from Peninsular Hill without having had to fire a shot, and I took up my outpost position indicated by Colonel Gore when we arrived.

"And now we were to experience a few real hard trying days' work, the York and Lancaster with the 5th Dragoon Guards being detailed next day as rearguards to the convoy, and the men were put on three-quarters rations. The convoy started at 6 a.m., and we took up positions on all the surrounding kopjes within rifle range, and also lined the top of a large wooded ravine. Colonel Gore took command of both convoys, his own and Major Lynch's, and we had to stay where we were until the last wagon had got out of rifle range. We then followed, covered by the 5th Dragoon Guards, and helping any wagons that had stuck in drifts or awkward places. It was a long march, and several teams of oxen that had been in the rear, and had to be pushed on to catch up the others, began to flag. They had had nothing to eat for two days, and as twilight came on it was soon evident that two of the wagons could not be got into camp that night without fresh teams. They stuck finally at the last drift, and even both teams together were too exhausted to

Exhausted  
teams.

pull one wagon through. The flank-guards had all gone on into camp, the guns remaining on the nek in front covering us. I pointed out to the officer commanding the rearguard that, unless fresh teams were sent back from camp, we should have to remain there all night. We then tried to signal, but could not get into communication, and as it was getting dark we sent an orderly on at a gallop for fresh teams. It was obvious that, if the wagons were to be got over the drift before it became quite dark, they must be unloaded, and the bags of oats carried across by hand. The men had had nothing but their biscuit rations since breakfast at 5.30 a.m.; they preferred sending their cooked meat rations on the company wagon, and eating it with their tea when they got into camp, instead of carrying it with them in their haversacks. I don't think I ever admired them more than when they voluntarily took off their equipment and with a cheer started to carry the sacks of oats across on their backs. The two tired teams of oxen just managed to drag the empty wagons across one at a time, and my men then loaded them up on the other side of the drift. This was the second time that day that the men had been in the water up to their waists.

"After crossing the drift I sent half the company on to prepare the camp, hurry up the fresh teams, and get something to eat, as I knew

half my men would be wanted for outpost duty. We made a little further progress until we came to the foot of the final hill, when we were obliged to halt, as it was impossible for our worn-out teams, dead-beat as they were, to do any more. Shortly after halting we heard the fresh teams coming, and we lost no time in getting them attached to the two wagons. On rounding the corner of the hill, we could see 'Necklace Kopje' with General Bullock's camp under it.

No time for rations.

"It was now quite dark, and with difficulty we found our own convoy. There were no tents pitched, and a Staff Officer was awaiting me with pressing orders to move fifty of my men out at once as outposts, and twenty as escort to the 13th Field Battery out on the high ground flanking our convoy on the east. I asked for half an hour for the men to get some tea, but this was refused, so out all had to go without any food; I just managed to serve the men with a ration from my reserve rum, and that was all most of them had that night, so that they were twenty-four hours without a meal.

"General Bullock moved off that night under cover of our outposts, leaving our convoy to follow in the morning. All sorts of rumours were put about that Louis Botha had sworn to take these three convoys, and had been joined by De Wet. There were no alarms that night, but I did not get much sleep, as I was too

Shlangapies  
Mountains.

hungry, and it was very cold with only one blanket. We breakfasted as soon as it was light, for we were all too hungry to want to sleep. Fortunately we had plenty of time to make a fairish meal, as the wagons of General Bullock's convoy took a long time crossing the drift across the Mabola river just in front of us. This was a very bad drift, and the Mabola was still so swollen from the recent heavy rains that the oxen and mules had only their heads out of the water in mid-stream. Colonel Gore told me I could put eight of my men on each wagon ; this I did, and then took up a position on a very rocky kopje commanding the drift, in relief of some mounted infantry.

"It was again very late when we got into camp, the grim-looking Shlangapies mountain line frowning down on us, but well out of rifle range. Shlangapies was the stronghold of a Boer commando, fortunately not a very strong one, and the mountain was so steep and sharp, it was almost impossible to get wagons and guns up it ; the top was flat, with good grazing on it all the year round. On arrival in camp we were ordered to superintend a gang of Kaffirs in-trenching our section of the camp. That night we were unmolested on outpost duty.

"Next day we were off early as a flank-guard, and had to pass close under the 'finger' of the Shlangapies, a point from which all the

previous convoys had been sniped. Our guns took up a position to shell it, but the Boers must have had enough last time, as they did not open fire. Nearing  
Pietretief.

"We were losing about sixty oxen a day now through overwork and want of food, but the date by which we had to reach General French was getting very near, so there was no help for it. We did a very long march that day, seventeen miles at least; there were a lot of small rivers to ford, but it was good going for the wagons, as it was almost all on the flat. We were late into camp again, and the men were very tired, so we got the Kaffirs to intrench our section of camp, and they required a lot of superintending. We furnished outposts as usual, and next day our convoys were passed through to Smith Dorrien, our mounted troops escorting them as far as the next line of kopjes, which were occupied by the 2nd Battalion Cameron Highlanders. These kopjes blocked our view of the town of Pietretief itself.

"And now we had reached the end of our outward journey, but had to wait a couple of days for the empty convoys to come back to us, with a lot of Boer families, prisoners of war from General French, and some worn-out cavalry horses. We obtained permission to go out with twenty-five men to a farm about a couple of miles off to try to obtain sheep or fowls, etc.,

Return  
journey.

and returned with about fifty sheep and goats, a cow and several calves, a pig, and four fowls. These were most acceptable, as we were still on three-quarters rations, so the men had a great feast on that and the following night, and the Dublins who went out with our men were equally lucky.

"When all the empty convoys and several ambulances of sick and wounded, together with the Boer prisoners from General French, had come in, we started off on our return journey to Volksrust. The empty wagons travelled at a fast pace and we did quite eighteen miles that first day. I had to find a sergeant and twenty men as escort to the Boer prisoners, the rest of my men marching in the centre of the second convoy.

"We camped the second night at Necklace Kopje Camp, and here it became necessary to shoot some of the used-up cavalry horses who could go no further. The 'Bouquet d'Afrik' from the oxen that had died on the way out was ever present with us now. There were few incidents till we reached our old camp on 'Rocky Kopje' north of Wakkerstrom. Here General Bullock held a 'Pow-wow,' and told us that the Camerons were to take the convoys on to Volksrust, and the rest of the force was to make an expedition into the Shlang valley, in conjunction with a force from Ingogo under

Colonel Kirkpatrick, to try to capture some small parties of Boers who were moving about there on the farms. We had in consequence a very long and hard day, and after a twenty miles' march reached Volksrust at dusk. The next morning I received orders to go back to Ingogo that same day. The R.S.O. very kindly consented to let me go down on an empty baggage train starting about two in the afternoon and not reaching Charlestown until the evening. I don't think I got to Ingogo much before midnight, and, after sleeping on the station platform, reached the regimental Head Quarters on the morning of April 18th. The same afternoon we marched back to Botha's Post, and I handed over H Company to Major Byass, who had just joined (on promotion) from the 2nd Battalion."

Back to  
Volksrust.

This interesting paper gives a good notion of the hard work of convoy-escorting, showing as well that carelessness in scouting and outpost duty was not the rule on our part.

## CHAPTER XI

### ITALA AND OTHER MATTERS

WHILE Captain Vickerman and H Company were on trek, the remainder of the York and Lancaster continued to guard the Ingogo line, and few events of importance occurred, although there were many false night alarms and rumours of impending attacks.

On April 16th Captain Revell Sutton's Volunteer Company, with Lieutenants Longden and Barnes, joined the regiment at Ingogo. Lieutenant Barnes and twenty men remained at Head Quarters, Ingogo, but the rest of the company left on April 19th.

Captain Sutton took up the post at Coetzee's Drift, and Lieutenant Longden the one at Partidge Hill. This relieved Lieutenant Vaughan and G Company, who in their turn moved off to Newcastle, where they took over the posts held by the 1st Volunteer Company; this last was then sent home under Lieutenant Chalmers.

About the middle of April a discovery was made that the Boers were tapping the telephone wires, a discovery which put an end to any important messages being sent by telephone.



On Wednesday, April 17th, a party of the York and Lancaster was sent out from Ingogo to protect a column under General Bullock. The following is a quotation from a personal account of the expedition, written at the time : " We were told that General Bullock was taking out a column, and that we were to be on the Berg by daylight to occupy Barsfield Hill and to prevent the Boers coming that way, so we marched all night. The infantry, which consisted of D Company and K Company (2nd Volunteers) under Captain Revell Sutton, all under Captain Swanston, crossed the Buffalo river at 5 p.m., before it got dusk, and bivouacked on the other side, waiting for the rendezvous which was to have been at midnight ; but the gun got stuck in crossing the drift, which caused a delay of half an hour. It was pitch dark when we moved off, and we had to keep very close together to prevent getting lost. As it was the gunners took the wrong road, for owing to the darkness it was difficult to keep in touch, and this still further delayed us. Our guide was wonderfully good ; he never hesitated as to the way, though it was so dark that, had there been a road, we could not have seen it. In some places there was a foot track, but often enough there was not even that, and we had to twist and turn a good deal to get the best ground for the gun. We were very relieved to find ourselves when

Guarding  
General  
Bullock's  
column.

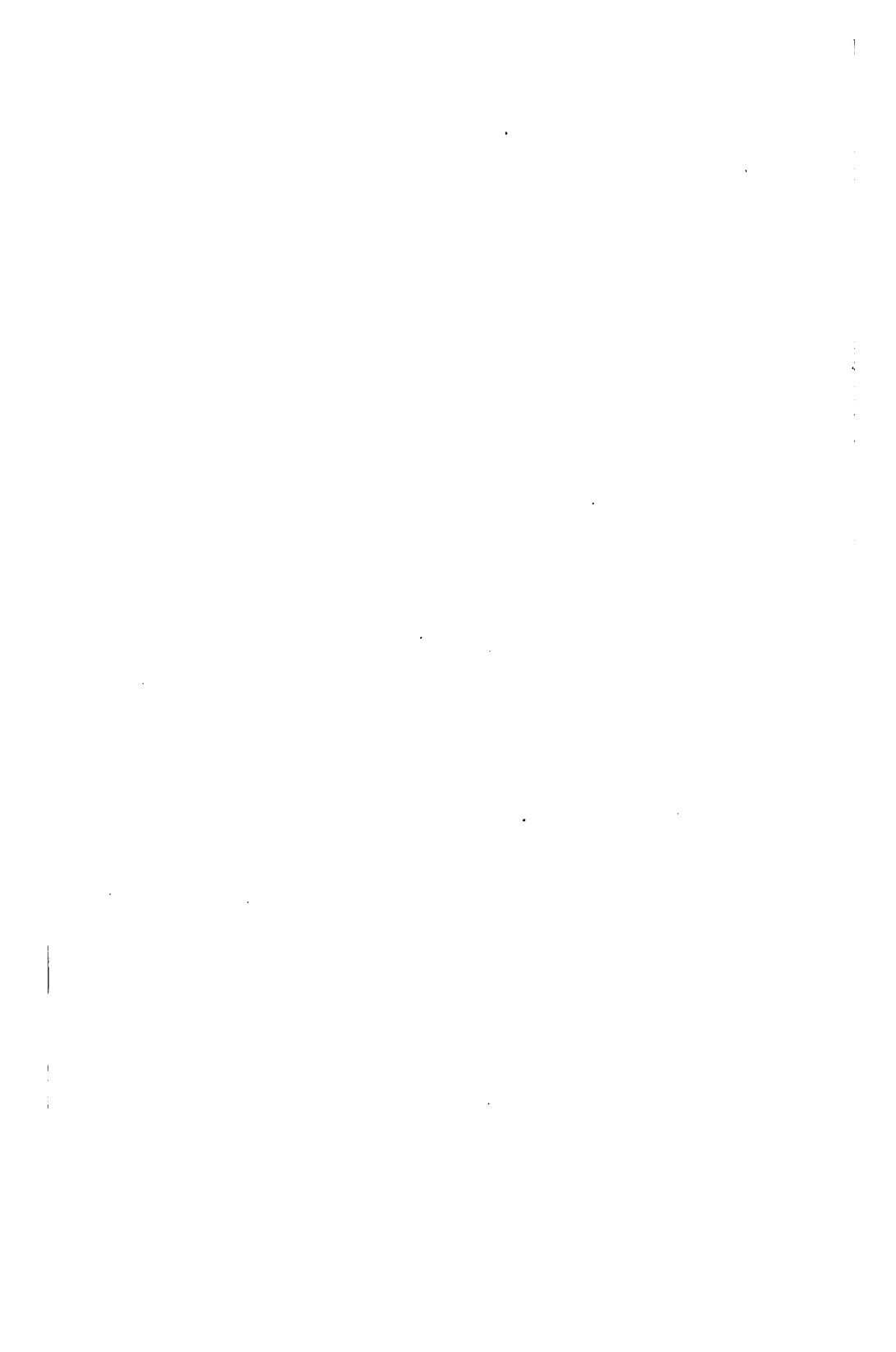
May, 1901. day broke, at the foot of the hill, our final position, and to see the cavalry already on the top; the infantry got up by 7.30 a.m. It was a very tiring march, as we had no proper halts all night and many checks. Much of the ground was very rough, and the spruits very muddy, and one of our wagons was overturned. The final climb up the hill was an excessively stiff one, and when we reached the summit we had to escort the gun into position. We saw several parties of Boers, but all out of range of our gun.

"General Bullock was sweeping along the Shlang valley, and when he had passed our position we retired, leaving the hill at 2 p.m. and reaching camp about six hours later."

Sickness was very rife towards the end of April amongst the animals, many horses and mules falling victims to it. In Newcastle they were losing as many as twenty animals daily, and as those useful though unsavoury scavengers, the vultures, were too shy to venture into camp after the dead bodies, and it was impossible to bury them fast enough, the whole place became extremely unhealthy.

By the beginning of May Colonel Kirkpatrick was given command of the Volksrust sub-district, which left Major Scholes in command of the regiment.

At length, on May 8th, we got marching





A BOER FAMILY AT HOME  
Tommy making friends

orders once more, and, being relieved by the Dublin Fusiliers, proceeded to Volksrust, which we found very much changed since our short stay there nearly a year ago, the town having grown considerably, and many flourishing shops having been opened. The garrison there consisted of the regimental Head Quarters, gunners, 8th Hussars, and General Bullock's Head Quarters. A room in the town was used as a club by the officers, and as we were still living in tents, we were only too glad to get such a shelter from the dust-storms which raged incessantly. May, 1901.

But we had not been more than a week at Volksrust before we were once more on trek, being sent off to the Orange River Colony, to bring in the Boers and their stock from the surrounding farms. The expedition included 360 infantry (York and Lancaster), a 15-lb. battery, and three squadrons of 8th Hussars, all under Colonel Kirkpatrick's command. No tents could be taken on account of the wagons having to travel as light as possible, and the nights were bitterly cold, which did not help matters.

An eight hours' march brought us, on the first day, to Potter Hill Farm, about six miles south-west of Iketini Nek. Next day, Friday, May 17th, Yamman Hill was reached, and here a whole day was occupied in collecting cattle,

Orange River  
Colony.

sheep, and horses, the last giving a great deal of trouble, as they were very fierce and wild, and almost succeeded in stampeding the cavalry horses. This was the limit of the expedition, and we could see the other columns which, with our own, were converging to a common centre.

One of the farmers' wives, who was brought in, spoke English very well, and so did her children. She asked after the Queen, and on being told she was dead, remarked: "She was my Queen too." When our terms of peace were explained to her she would not believe that General Botha had refused them. This was only one out of many instances, showing how little authentic news was allowed to filter through to the bulk of the people; had they known as much as their leaders knew, the war would, in all probability, have ended long before it did.

On the way back to Volksrust our little force encountered General Colville's column on its march from Standerton, and took over their cattle, which increased the numbers tremendously and made progress very slow. Camp was reached on Monday, May 20th, and after being five days on trek our tents were very welcome.

Great care and trouble were bestowed upon the refugee camp which was formed at Volksrust. Colonel Kirkpatrick paid a weekly visit of inspection to it, when he patiently listened to





**REFUGEE CAMP, VOLKSRUST**  
Boers outside their store, waiting to buy



all complaints, making notes of each, and doing his best to remove the cause, if any such existed. General Hildyard also visited the camp once a month, thus giving the Boers a further chance of airing their grievances. It was only natural that the women should think with regret of their homes, which, to most of them, represented the little world in which all their previous lives had been passed. Natural, too, that they should look with unfriendly and critical eyes on any arrangements we made for their comfort, arrangements which were necessarily limited and hampered by the exigencies of war ; but at the same time they were too ready to forget their obligations to us, and to ignore or deny the fact that, had we left them on their farms, a far worse fate would have been theirs.

Refugeecamp,  
Volksrust.

Signalling being very important work, a signalling class was started at Volksrust which some of the officers joined.

On August 6th Lord Kitchener published the famous Proclamation of permanent banishment from South Africa of all Boer leaders taken in arms after the date of September 15th. The Proclamation, which it was hoped would deter the Boers from prolonging the war any further, had to be taken by British officers to the Boer leaders in their respective districts. This necessitated passing beyond our own lines into those of the enemy, and a personal account of how

Lord  
Kitchener's  
Proclamation.

this order was carried out near Ingogo is given as a sample of similar expeditions : "We received an order to take out Lord Kitchener's Proclamation, and personally hand it to the Boer commandants in our neighbourhood, so I started out from Ingogo for the Boer lines on Wednesday, August 14th. I was armed only with a white flag and had one cavalry orderly, who had volunteered.

"The Boer leaders for whom I had letters, and whom I hoped to find, were Veldt-Cornets Cornelius Uys, Charles Mentzes, and Commandant Hermanus V. Botha, a nephew of the Commandant-General Louis Botha. We did five miles that evening and slept the night at Botha's Post, ten miles east of Botha's Pass.

"Our start next morning was an early one, as we left at 5 a.m. We first went up Botha's Pass, and then followed the road leading to Vrede. After going about five miles, we at length saw a moving figure near a tin shanty, so we rode slowly up to it, and came right upon it before anyone saw us. A Kaffir ran on in front and gave the alarm, and some Boers came hurrying out of the house, hastily picking up and loading their rifles and crowding round me. I gave the letters to the one who was evidently the commandant, and he opened the letter addressed to C. Uys, promising that he would himself deliver the other two to C. Mentzes and H. V. Botha.

Uys spoke English quite well. He was evidently very suspicious of treachery, and fearful lest an armed force was following on our heels. He asked at once how I got there, at the same time looking very angrily and distrustfully at my companion, so I hastened to explain that we had just followed the road until the shanty came into view, and, seeing near it the first living creature we had encountered since leaving the pass, had been induced to leave the straight track and come there.

Cornelius Uys.

"When Uys had finished reading the Proclamation aloud in Dutch to his men, he laughed scornfully and said that it was waste of time to bring such stuff out to him ; he rode back with me for about three miles, to see me safely through his posts, which we had somehow missed on our way out. It was interesting to hear his views on the war, and I was able to give him positive answers about the chances of European intervention and the capture of London by the Germans, rumours which were common on commando. I was also able to soothe his fears about his relatives in our concentration camps, and assure him that they were being neither starved nor ill-treated, as he was given to understand by reading cuttings taken from some of the home pro-Boer papers. He said that he owed it to his relatives who had fallen during the war to go on fighting, that they might be avenged, and

Result of the  
Proclamation.

that the purpose for which they had given their lives might not fall to the ground. He evaded the question of his duty to the living, and showed that he did not wish to discuss the evil effects which the continuance of the war was bringing on his country. We parted good friends, and he was very glad of the little lunch which was all I could offer him.

"I got back to camp at Ingogo on Thursday afternoon about four o'clock, having accomplished my task rather quicker than I had anticipated."

Unfortunately this Proclamation had a reverse effect to the one desired ; the Boer leaders were only more fully determined than before to fight to the last, and redoubled their efforts to keep up the war spirit amongst their followers. As the leaders knew that they alone suffered by the Proclamation if they did not surrender by the 25th September, 1901, they thought it was to their advantage to keep the men of their commandos out in the field. Many of the women in the Volksrust refugee camp were allowed to go out to their husbands and relatives on commando, to persuade them to surrender before the 15th and so escape the dreaded banishment ; but even their prayers and entreaties were of no avail, and it was a sorrowful procession of women with white flags who returned to camp later on, having failed (with one

exception) in their mission. One among them had to walk back, as her husband confiscated her horses and buggy—a poor appreciation on his part of the trouble and risk which she had encountered in trying to save him.

Difficulties of catering.

On August 18th Colonel Kirkpatrick returned to Ingogo to resume the command of the regiment, the Head Quarters of which moved down there on that date, Major Scholes remaining in command of a detachment at Volksrust. General Bullock had taken over command of the sub-district of Volksrust.

One great difficulty which at this period confronted those who had to look after the catering for the troops was the poor quality of the meat rations. The only mutton procurable was hardly worth cooking, and, although an extra half-pound a head was issued, it did not help much, being simply so much additional skin and bone. It may sound incredible, but it is a fact that some of the carcasses weighed only from 10 to 12 lb., whereas at home contractors are not allowed to supply carcasses weighing less than 52 lb. The enormous discrepancy between these figures needs no further comment.

A Kaffir wedding took place near Ingogo about the middle of August, and the subsequent festivities were interesting, as all the Kaffirs, numbering several hundreds, assembled for miles round, attired in native costume and wearing all

A Kaffir  
wedding.

their beads. Their custom at a wedding is to form into rings and dance through the whole day, fresh relays waiting ready to step into the places vacated by those who are tired out. One man stands in the middle of each ring and beats time upon any available instrument, in this case an old ration biscuit tin. The steps are set by a girl who dances, and if she claps her hands, or whatever else she does, the rest all copy her. It was quite a strange thing to hear them all chanting and see them looking quite serious, for as a rule Kaffirs when together laugh and joke. Their spirits are maintained and their thirst quenched by constant visits to the tubs filled with joallah (Kaffir beer), a large quantity of which is always prepared for a Kaffir wedding.

When September 15th arrived no appreciable increase in surrenders could be noticed, and the immediate result of the Proclamation seemed merely to be increased activity on the part of the Boers. On the Zulu border both Forts Prospect and Itala were attacked on the night of September 26th; from the former post they were forced to retire after having sniped away all night. An account of the attack on Fort Itala is given by Lieutenant Palmer, 1st York and Lancaster Regiment, who was with the 5th Divisional Mounted Infantry that was formed at Volksrust. The following regiments sent about a half-company each to make up this



A KAFFIR WEDDING GROUP





corps: Dublin Fusiliers, Middlesex, York and Lancaster, Lancashire Fusiliers, South Lancashires, Dorsets, Lancasters, one section of Royal Field Artillery, and two Maxims. At first this corps was scattered, their posts being far apart. About June, 1901, the whole corps was sent to Zululand to guard the border. No heavy fighting occurred till Itala and Prospect, and of the former fight Lieutenant Palmer writes as follows:

Attack on  
Fort Itala.

"On the 24th September our native scouts reported that the Boers at Babanango, a hill about twelve miles from Itala and round which the Boers could generally be found, had been reinforced. Major Chapman (who commanded the 5th Mounted Infantry) therefore decided to move out and attack them, intending to leave camp on September 25th, but on the morning of that day our scouts reported the presence of several commandos in the vicinity of Babanango, and also said that their numbers were steadily increasing.

"All idea of attacking had then to be abandoned, as our force only consisted of 300 men with two guns of the 69th Battery Royal Field Artillery and one Maxim. A few days prior to this date we had attached to us a Zulu Impi, under the control of two local celebrities, Mr. Foxon and Mr. Cooper, who also acted as interpreters. The Zulus, to the number of about

**Fort Itala.** 15,000, had been called out by the High Commissioner of Zululand to protect their own border; but they were very poorly armed, having only a few obsolete rifles, assegais, battle-axes, and sticks.

“During the morning scouts and natives brought in further reports and rumours of so alarming a nature that the Impi and their leaders concluded Itala was no place for them, and retired to the M’Kandhla Bush, about twelve miles distant, where they were quite safe from attack. In the afternoon news was brought in that the Boers would attack us during the night or early the next morning, and that their numbers were estimated at 2,000 strong.

“Our position at Itala was a most unsuitable one for defence, its only recommendation being its proximity to water. The camp was well wooded, having a plantation of blue gum and wattle trees, which afforded a certain amount of shelter to our transport. Round this plantation were four or five sangars; a hill immediately overlooking the camp was intrenched, and the Maxim gun in position on it. This hill formed part of a ridge, and further along, about 1,700 yards away, was another rising piece of ground called Upper Hill, which will be mentioned again later on. Immediately surrounding the whole camp were ridges, hills, and dongas, ranging from 500 to 4,000 yards distant.

"During the whole afternoon our scouts were watching the Boers' movements, and late in the afternoon reported that the enemy had commenced to saddle up and move out. We had about fifteen scouts at work, and they gradually fell back in front of the Boers as the latter advanced, and while doing so sent in continuous information, keeping up this mode of communication till a few minutes before the attack began. Fort Itala.

"At 9 p.m. we manned the trenches, and Major Chapman decided to send a small force of thirty men to Upper Hill, about 1,700 yards distant from the one where the Maxim gun was, and a few minutes later this force was further increased by another thirty men under Lieutenants Lefroy and Kane.

"At about half-past eleven some Boer scouts came in contact with this force, which was shortly after attacked by a commando six hundred strong under Christian Botha, and in twenty minutes all firing at that point ceased, but we did not know until afterwards exactly what had happened.

"The larger portion of the Boer force now attacked the main camp, first with a heavy rifle fire, and then with a charge on foot. The Maxim guns and rifles gave them a warm reception, shrapnel bursting in among them at close range. The Boers who rushed the lower trenches got

Attack on  
Fort Itala.

within three yards of us, so near in fact that the commands given by their leaders were quite audible to us all. They were a plucky lot, and so determined that even when badly wounded they refused to leave the firing line for longer than was necessary to allow their friends to cut out the bullets and bandage up their wounds, which done they immediately returned to the fight.

"After this rush was checked, and the Boers had captured Upper Hill, they confined themselves to rifle fire, which was continued until 4 a.m., when a lull took place which lasted until daybreak.

"At this time Surgeon-Lieut. Fielding, R.A.M.C., went forward to give first aid to the wounded on the Upper Hill. We all thought that the attack was finished, but on the doctor and his attendants showing themselves a heavy fire was immediately poured on them and on the whole camp, and one of the stretcher-bearers was wounded. Owing to the sangars being built to resist a frontal attack only, the Boers from our right and left rear gave us a warm time, and it was chiefly owing to their fire we suffered so at this point.

"The day passed very slowly, as we had no food or water, and we longed for night again. The guns were compelled to cease firing at 8.30 a.m., as they were the special mark of the

Boers, so our gunners took out their breech blocks and sought refuge among the trees.

Retirement to  
M'Kandhla.

" Meantime we were running short of ammunition on the top of the hill, so volunteers were called for, and two gunners, Bradley and Robinson, started to bring it up. Robinson was shot, but Bradley got through and was awarded the V.C. for this.

" Rifle fire continued the whole day, and when the Boers saw that they were unable to take the camp they turned their fire on the houses, and over 200 men were killed.

" At 7 p.m. the last Boer had retired, and about three hours later we were prepared to move back on M'Kandhla, a position vastly superior to Itala, and where we knew there was ammunition. An officer and twenty men were left behind under the white flag to bury the dead. The veterinary officer also remained and did his best for the wounded, until he was relieved by Lieutenant Fielding, who later on was assisted by the District-Surgeon of M'Kandhla. The Court-house at the latter place was turned into a temporary hospital, into which as soon as possible the wounded were moved.

" A dispatch was found, from Louis Botha to Chris Botha, stating that the key of the position was the hill overlooking the camp; but after the assault on Upper Hill the Boers would not face a second fight, so the 'key' was never taken.

Guide Collins  
and scouts.

“Details were afterwards given us of the fight on the Upper Hill. It appears that the Boers rushed us on all sides, and although rifles and bayonets, etc., were freely used, we were unable to repulse the attack owing to the heavy odds, which were made still heavier by a few of our men being taken prisoners. These prisoners and all the available natives around were used by the Boers to carry their wounded to the farms or any houses in the neighbourhood.

“Two days after the attack a column arrived, which would have been far more welcome had it come to our assistance a little sooner.

“Before closing this account, the splendid work done by the scouts under Guide Collins must be mentioned. It was entirely owing to them that we were warned in time to avert a surprise, and Major Chapman thanked them publicly on parade for their good services. When asked, during the night of the attack, if they would like to save themselves and go, they replied that, if the soldiers were going to die, they too would die with them.

“The casualties on both sides during this attack were: British, 83 killed and wounded, 36 captured; Boers, 120 killed, 250 wounded, including two commandants.”

This guarding of the Zululand border was very necessary work, for Zululand is a good grazing country and rich in cattle; therefore the

Boers made use of it whenever they could, and just at this time Louis Botha had invaded it for the purpose of renewing his stock of cattle. The Zulu chief, Majumbe of Mquita, gave a good proof of his loyalty to us. The Boers returned him 800 head of looted cattle, with a receipt for the balance of what had been taken, redeemable at the end of the war, at the same time explaining that they were not at war with him. Majumbe, however, sent back the cattle, with a message to the Boers that he did not want favours from them, because he meant to remain loyal to his white king.

Zulu chief,  
Majumbe.

Such was the loyalty and gratitude of the Zulus that they were ready to suffer not only loss of property, but, if need were, loss of life, without seeking for other reward than to remain under the protection of the white king, whose right hand was truth, and whose counsellor was justice; who did the thing that was right for Zulu and white man alike; who passed beneficent laws, and who would not allow those he ruled to be pillaged or bullied.

## CHAPTER XII

### COLUMNS AND BLOCKHOUSES

**I**T was now quite evident that the Proclamation of August 6th had failed, and therefore fresh measures must be adopted if peace was to be attained. The Boers were directing their energies towards evading any decisive engagement, aiming rather at harassing and annoying us in every possible way, in the vain hope of thereby wearing out our resources, our spirits, and our patience.

Their training, together with the nature of the country and their intimate knowledge of it, combined to favour this irregular mode of warfare, and it was no easy task for us to cope with opponents who, whenever the odds were against them, could speedily disperse their forces, large or small, and reassemble at any given spot miles away.

To meet these difficulties Lord Kitchener at first tried the plan of increasing the numbers and mobility of the columns, but as time went on and the guerilla warfare still raged, it was determined to perfect the system of block-houses already in operation.





MATERIALS FOR A BLOCKHOUSE



FINISHING A BLOCKHOUSE (NO. 27)

*To face p. 176*



Before the blockhouse lines were fairly started, Columns. the columns used either to work independently of each other or several would combine, converging simultaneously on a common centre, with a view to inclosing the Boers within a given area. The Boers, however, soon learned to foresee and forestall these manœuvres, and before the circle closed they would slip through and retreat to their hiding-places, of which there were many. In the Witkopjes in particular there were strongholds and caves approached by impregnable passes that could easily be held by a few determined men against a large force ; and so well were these retreats concealed that an army might have passed quite close without discovering the proximity of the enemy.

Towards the middle of October Louis Botha went south with his army, and General Walter Kitchener with a big force followed him up, while all the available troops blocked the points at which Botha could get north again. As many men as could be spared from Volksrust, Wakkerstrom and Ingogo held the neks round about, and at the same time parties of our men held Barsfield, Molls Nek, De Jagers Nek and Wakkerstrom Nek. Some personal records of holding the last named position are given here.

“ We had plenty of alarms, and on Wednesday, October 16th, I and thirty of our men were sent out to Wakkerstrom Nek with orders to

Holding  
Wakkerstrom  
Nek.

stop Louis Botha and his commando getting through.

"We started that day, each man with one waterproof sheet and one blanket only. After a very hot march of thirteen miles we reached the nek just as it was getting dark, and then had to make dispositions to hold the place. The country on both sides of the nek is tremendous, full of positions commanding each other,



BIVOUAC: WAKKERSTROM HILL.

and to which the enemy might have come and sniped in order to attract our attention, while their main body went through the nek.

"As there were many empty farms in the neighbourhood where they could shelter during the night, it was thought probable they would attempt to get through the nek at daybreak. We had posts on the most exposed places on the high hills north-east and north-west of the nek, and just as we were standing to arms early

on Thursday morning, we heard firing on the hill north-west of the nek, at a post held by the 8th Hussars. A party of twenty Boers had crept up the hill trying to get round the post, who, however, returned the enemy's fire and prevented their advance, though they wounded the sentry. Had the Boers succeeded in taking this hill, they would have commanded the nek; we should then have had great difficulty in ousting them, as it was a very stiff climb from our side, and we should have been under their fire all the way up.

Holding  
Wakkerstrom  
Nek.

"The rest of that day was spent in sangar-making and fortifying our position as best we could. We built little round forts for each of the isolated outposts, and a bigger sangar for the main reserve party. As before, when on Wakkerstrom Hill, we were mostly in the clouds, and the nights were too cold to allow us much sleep. We were, therefore, not sorry when on Tuesday, 22nd, we received orders to return to Volksrust, which we did that afternoon, reaching camp at 6 p.m. after a four hours' march. All our other parties came in the same day, as Louis Botha and most of his commando had somehow slipped away from the pursuing force and gone north."

Failures of this sort were frequently occurring, and the columns alone proved insufficient to prevent them, so the blockhouse system was

**Blockhouses.** begun in real earnest. These blockhouses were stretched in lines across the country to form barriers against which our columns could force the Boers, and were erected at intervals ranging from 500 to 3,000 yards apart. The distances between varied according to the nature of the ground, the object being to leave no bit of so-called dead ground along the line through which the Boers could pass unobserved by the blockhouse garrisons. The length of the lines and the limited number of men sometimes prevented this object from being attained.

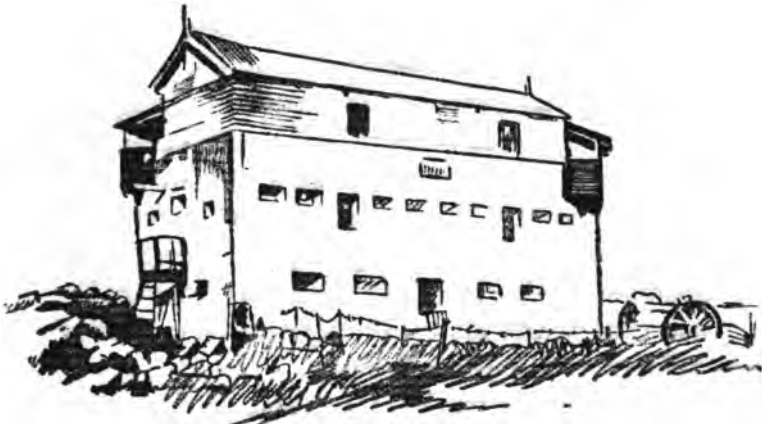
The designs for blockhouses were all sent in sealed packets from Head Quarters at the base. There was not much variety amongst them, though the roofs occasionally differed ; some of these were flat and round, while others had high gabled tin roofs, with trap-doors at each end for windows. This latter design afforded more space and light, but too much air came in on cold nights, when the loopholes alone, without the trap-doors, gave quite sufficient ventilation.

One of the first blockhouses was erected at Opperman's Kraal, thirteen miles north of Volksrust. It was built of stone, two stories high, and was altogether on a much more expensive scale than the subsequent ones, which were principally made of corrugated iron with stone ballast between.

Barbed wire entanglements were stretched

round and between the blockhouses. When the Boers were hemmed between these barriers and a column, they were obliged either to break back through the column or attempt to cross our lines. Wire entanglements.

Although De Wet has called our blockhouse policy a "blockhead policy," the Boers have confessed that they did not like facing these entanglements, since it usually meant having to



ONE OF THE FIRST BLOCKHOUSES.

cut the wires while under fire from a blockhouse on either side. When they had once run the gauntlet of this fire, they hesitated before facing it again in order to re-cross our lines, even when, as often happened, there lay on the other side the country which they knew, and where the Kaffirs would cook and cater for them, and look after the horses.

Wire en-  
tanglements.

Between columns and blockhouses, the Boers got little rest; hardships such as the pangs of hunger, scarcity of food, clothes and horses, added to the constant feeling of insecurity, sapped even their courage, and in the long run tired them out, just as they had meant to tire us out, with their continual sniping and their guerilla warfare.

The bits of dead ground out of sight of our forts were naturally chosen by the Boers as the safest spots for breaking through our lines. This they sometimes succeeded in doing by driving big herds of cattle up to the entanglements, exciting them to make a wild rush, and by sheer force of the onset breaking down the barbed wires, the Boers galloping through the openings made by the poor beasts, who were by that time nearly mad with fright and the injuries inflicted by the terrible barbs.

To guard as much as possible against this ruse, we made these bits of dead ground more impassable by digging broad trenches on both sides of the wire barricades. We also added a tell-tale wire which, when cut, allowed a large stone to drop on to a piece of corrugated iron, thus making noise enough to warn our men in the blockhouses, who then opened fire down the wire towards the spot where the Boers were getting through. Without some such device, it was impossible for those inside the blockhouses



to hear what was going on a few hundred yards away, when the wind was howling and the rain and hail descending in torrents. Venteschief  
Bridge.

Nothing particular occurred until Sunday, November 17th, when rumours reached us of a Boer party intending to break through close by, so we had to line the railway, and a party of about twenty of our men and one officer was sent to a spot seven miles away, where we lay out on the wet ground all night, keeping watch for the Boers who never came. Lieutenant Nash, Leicestershire Regiment, who was attached to us in command of a small detachment of sixteen men at Venteschief Bridge, took out a patrol along the railway line, and was wounded in the left arm by two Boers lurking near the line, evidently waiting for an opportunity to cross. He had a narrow escape, as one of the bullets went through his helmet.

Before the middle of December we had been relieved by the 3rd Sussex Regiment and were once more on trek. We left Volksrust on December 13th with General Bullock and one section Royal Engineers, to start the blockhouse line running from Botha's Pass south-west towards Vrede. It was a wet march to Iketine, where we spent the night, leaving next morning at eight o'clock. We had a long trek that day, and it was very heavy going and hard work to get the mule wagons along, so it was not until

On trek from  
Volksrust.

ten and a half hours after leaving Iketine that we reached our bivouac for the night at a point four miles short of Botha's Pass.

The next day, Sunday, we marched to a camping-ground at Amelia, about four miles to the west of the pass, and here we were met by Colonel Kirkpatrick, who had come up from Ingogo. Colonel Garrett with his column also joined us, and stayed on for mutual protection until the line had reached Cork Post.

Major Byass, with E Company, had already taken up the Botha's Pass main blockhouse, and his company was the first one put into the blockhouses as they were built. F Company followed, and both companies had their headquarters at Botha's Pass. Next to them came K and D Companies, with headquarters at Klip River Post, our next strong station after Botha's Pass. Here a large reserve of tinned food and ammunition was stored, and sixty non-commissioned officers and men were left to guard both the store and the fort. This latter was built of topsods, cut by hand, and it commanded the ford over Klip river. The headquarters of A, G and H Companies were at Witkopjes Post. Finally came B and C Companies stretching to the west beyond their headquarters at Cork Post, until the line was taken on by the Munster Fusiliers and the Essex Regiment as far as Heilbron. General



BOTHA'S PASS

An armoured wagon being pulled up the hill, 17th December, 1901

*To face p. 184*



Bullock commanded the line up to Cork Post, and from there it was under the command of General E. O. H. Hamilton.

Blockhouse  
line from  
Botha's Pass.

After reaching Amelia we were very busy putting up blockhouses at the rate of about four a day. In this we were helped by the Royal Engineers under Captain Von Hügel, who gave



WASHING DAY, INSIDE KLIP RIVER FORT.

all instructions to our working parties and supervised the work done ; we also had the help of Kaffir labour. One non-commissioned officer and six men were left to guard each blockhouse as soon as it was built ; therefore as we moved on our numbers daily decreased. The officers lived at the strong posts, with the exception of one officer who lived at a blockhouse halfway

Christmas  
Day, 1901.

between. At each strong post there were reserve stores from which the blockhouses were supplied weekly.

Work continued every day from six in the morning until six in the evening, putting up blockhouses and wire. We had an interval for dinner, which usually consisted of biscuits and tinned rations.

By Monday, December 23rd, we had got as far as Rooi Nek, and pitched our tents two and a half miles north-west of Klip River Camp. Although Christmas Day was spent in camp, there was plenty of work to do, and two blockhouses were built that day. We worked for an hour and a half in the morning at making wire entanglements between the blockhouses, starting as usual at 6 a.m. The day began rather badly by the early morning mounted patrol being driven in by a party of Boers, who, however, did not again annoy us.

The Boers in parties of twenty and thirty hovered round throughout the day, and the cavalry and one pom-pom went out after them, but with no success.

On December the 26th, after a hot march of five and a half hours, starting at four in the morning, we arrived at Hout Hoek, later called the Witkopjes Post.

The following day we had to back up Colonel Garrett's mounted column, which went out at

3 a.m. to try to surprise a party of Boers on the Witkopjes. They were supposed to be at Strypplaats Farm, but, failing to find them there, the column took up a position on a hill to the north of the farm, seven miles south-west of Witkopjes Post. Unluckily it was a very misty morning, which enabled the Boers to elude the column when at the farm, and to follow on its trail to the hill, where, under cover of the mist, they crept up close to the outposts and poured in a heavy fire at close range before their presence was known. In spite of being thus surprised, and having been roused out of their sleep in the early hours of the morning, which is not conducive to a stout heart, the Colonials soon rallied in a courageous manner, and with a cheer charged the Boers, killing one and capturing three, as well as 350 head of cattle.

With Colonel  
Garrett's  
column.

The last days of 1901 we spent making the fort at Witkopjes Post, and working at block-houses and wire entanglements.

Wednesday, January 1st, 1902, the third New Year's Day we had spent in South Africa, passed fairly uneventfully.

On Thursday, 2nd, which was a very hot day, we were up at 3 a.m.; but the morning proved too misty for us to move off before nine o'clock, when we started, leaving behind a strong post of four officers and sixty men at Witkopjes. A three hours' march brought us to Quagga Poort,

Attack on  
Cork Post.

just beyond Commando Spruit, where we encamped.

Our line of sixty-eight blockhouses, from Botha's Pass to a line about forty miles southwest of it, was completed by the middle of January, a final strong post being built at Cork, with Major Scholes in command.

Colonel Garrett's column left us on Saturday, January 18th, and about twelve o'clock that night we heard heavy firing, and bullets came whizzing through the camp. We were then holding Cork Post, and nearly all the men were in the blockhouses; but we soon turned out and manned the trenches until four in the morning. It was a horrible night with rain, sleet, and darkness. We could see nothing of the Boers save the flashes from their rifles, as they contented themselves with firing at us from a distance. We husbanded our ammunition during the night, expecting the enemy to come on at daybreak; but instead of that they retired just before dawn to the Witkopjes. The firing from the trenches round the hill was kept up all night: one blockhouse fired as many as 2,000, another 450 rounds. Luckily we had no casualties, though some of the blockhouses were very much peppered, and one of the Boers' bullets went through a loophole, striking a rifle that a man was in the act of firing off.

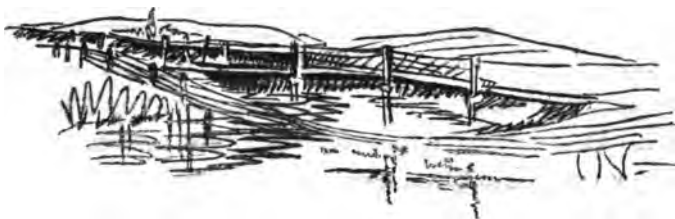
Life in the blockhouses was on the whole



very monotonous, and we were glad of any literature we could get; instances have been quoted of men walking over three miles to procure even an old newspaper, which, when obtained, would be eagerly devoured.<sup>1</sup>

Life in a  
blockhouse  
line.

But when rumours came, as they frequently did, that the Boers were preparing to rush the line, and attempts were made night after night to cross at different points, we had plenty to do,



BRIDGE OVER KLIP RIVER.

and their constant sniping caused us many sleepless nights.

By the beginning of February the Klip river was so swollen that it proved a great hindrance to convoys getting food up the line, and some of the garrisons were on half rations. Rinderpest and lung-sickness too were very bad that season, causing the loss of a great many animals. Although we were on the high veldt, it was ninety degrees in the shade during the daytime. The nights were a contrast, being very cold,

<sup>1</sup> "Sheffield Daily Telegraph," May 27th, 1902.

Life in a  
blockhouse  
line.

dark and misty, which favoured the Boers in their midnight attempts to cross our line. Two more blockhouses built near Klip River Post were a help in guarding against these attacks, and strengthened our open and exposed position.

On February 18th we saw about forty of the enemy on the hills south of our fort ; the guides easily recognized their leader as C. Mentzes on account of a white horse he always rode. The Boers were only about 2,000 yards from one of our blockhouses, but they knew quite well we had no mounted men to send after them, and they even waved handkerchiefs to a signaller who was signalling their movements down to Head Quarters. The Boers took a good look round, and when a few shots had been exchanged they retired, no doubt not before they had seen what they wanted.

Working in conjunction with the columns, never relaxing a sharp look-out against the Boers, keeping the blockhouses rationed and things up to the mark, together with outpost, transport, intelligence and signalling duties, constituted life on the blockhouse line ; and although the daily routine may at times have been irksome in its monotony, it certainly was not so from lack of work.

The second week in March Colonel Wallerstein arrived to take over command of the regiment from Colonel Kirkpatrick, who was retiring,



LIEUT.-COLONEL WALLERSTEIN

*To face p. 190*



though he did not finally leave us till May 5th. We were all very sorry to lose our old colonel, who had done so much for the regiment; we felt we were losing in him not only a commanding officer, but also a friend. Change of Colonels.

The constant activity of the Boers in our neighbourhood necessitated careful scouting, and the Intelligence Department was kept hard at work. In addition to this there was a lot of signalling to do, as any information we gained had to be signalled at once to the many columns moving down the line. But an account of the intelligence and signalling duties, of the good work done by our scouts, and of how Mani Botha and his men broke through our lines time after time must, together with other matters, be told in another chapter.

## CHAPTER XIII

### INTELLIGENCE AND SIGNALLING

**A** GREAT deal has been written, both at home and abroad, about the Intelligence Department, but a description from personal knowledge of the intelligence work done at Cork Post on the Vrede blockhouse line may yet be of interest. In this connection the valuable help afforded us by the Colonials and the natives is deserving of all praise.

On the outbreak of the war the natives were for the most part quite ready to rally to our side. They hoped for a juster rule, as well as better pay than they received from the Boers, who looked upon the Kaffirs as their rightful property. The Kaffir is naturally both hardy and courageous, and when treated with firmness as well as kindness, he makes a faithful servant. This we proved again and again during the war, and the Kaffirs on their side learned to trust us. They daily risked their lives to gain information of the Boers' movements, although they knew that possibly death awaited them should they fall into the hands of their former masters.

But it was for their women and children more than for themselves they feared the Boers' vengeance, and when, as sometimes happened, we were unable to protect their kraals, it cannot be wondered at that they betrayed us to the enemy. It should, however, be added, that they never did so unless hard pressed, and that many of them were faithful to death.

The bands of Kaffir scouts were led by Colonial guides, and in many cases ex-burghers were similarly employed by us, as the oversea Colonials did not know the country or the language any better than we ourselves did. It must have been very hard for these Boers to give up the struggle and throw in their lot with the British against their fellow-countrymen. They could not, however, shut their eyes to the fact that the truest patriotism now consisted in trying to prevent further unnecessary bloodshed. It was this conviction which steeled them to face death if captured, and to disregard the taunts of their late friends, who called them traitors and renegades.

Complete and detailed lists were drawn up of all the Boer farms, with the owners' names; and for the purpose of identification, each farm was marked on the list with a number corresponding to one on our survey maps. The farms were closely watched by our scouts, who reported to us the doings of their owners, and

**Guides.** brought word if any Boers on commando were hovering about. The Colonials and Kaffirs were splendid scouts; the former acted as interpreters, and were always ready to guide any party sent out on the strength of their information.

With help such as this our knowledge was extensive and accurate, although unfortunately we had not always sufficient troops to act upon it, since it took all our men to effectively guard our blockhouse line. Many of the Boers with whom we compared notes after peace was declared, expressed surprise at our intimate knowledge of them and their whereabouts.

It must not be forgotten that we had to contend against a foe who, from the first, was convinced of the importance of careful scouting; and our opponents were not only quick at reconnoitring but also quick at fighting, and when necessary, as they themselves acknowledge, quick at flight. They had too the advantage of being in their own country, and although every Boer was practically a scout born and bred, they did not rely on this alone, but employed picked bodies of scouts. One, at least, of their leaders—De Wet—added to his information about our movements the device of misleading us regarding his own.

With so wary an enemy it was difficult and dangerous work to collect intelligence. Our



scouts had to preserve the greatest secrecy and caution. Sometimes they were out night after night, miles away from any help, where a false step or the slightest noise on their part would have brought the Boers down on them at once. Scouting.

The intelligence thus gained resulted in many important captures in the farms at night; we also got warning of meditated attacks, which enabled us to prepare a counter surprise. We learned too how constantly the Boers obtained food and shelter from the farmhouses round, as well as from Kaffirs living beyond our protection; and how much this help relieved them from the burden of transport, which so seriously hampered our own movements. Frequent reports were brought in of firing having been heard, and of Boers being seen in various directions; their numbers used to range from just two to several hundreds.

Each post on the blockhouse line had its own guides and scouts, and they worked in small parties to avoid attracting attention. Many were the narrow escapes experienced, but only three scouts were captured and shot by the Boers. On moonlight nights it was especially difficult to outwit the keen-eyed enemy; then the mealie fields and stretches of long grass afforded a friendly cover for the hard-pressed scouts. On one occasion, about

Dangers of  
Scouting.

the middle of February, a party of Boers sighted and fired on a guide who was out with only one native. As they had dismounted and both their horses bolted, the two men had to seek refuge in some kraals. The Boers suspected where they were sheltering, and came to the door of the kraal in which they were hidden. The Kaffir denied all knowledge of the affair, which was a very plucky thing to do, for, had the men been discovered in his kraal, he would have had but a short shrift from the Boers. When the search party had gone to look elsewhere, the guide and his scout made a dash for our lines, which they finally reached in safety after running for seven miles; luckily they outdistanced the Boers, who caught sight of them, and gave chase on their ponies.

Hermann V. Botha, commonly called Mani Botha, a nephew of General Louis Botha and commandant of the Vrede Commando, was very active along our Vrede blockhouse line. The information about his movements and those of his veldt-cornets, which was gained by our scouts, is typical of much of the work done by them, as well as of the incessant activity and mobility of the Boer commandos.

At the beginning of February Mani and his brother Lewis Botha were located at Karlkrans, to the south-west of our Cork Post. Part of M. Botha's commando was then a good deal

further north, at Bothasberg; to this place he soon after withdrew with the rest of his men. A report was circulated that Mani Botha had died of wounds received on February 2nd; but our scouts soon discovered that this was not true, and the commandant himself in many subsequent engagements testified to the inaccuracy of the rumour.

Vrede  
Commando.

On February 23rd Mani Botha was at Mill river, south of the Witkopjes, with a commando about 200 strong, and a lot of natives in charge of horses and cattle. They tried to break through our columns, but failed in the attempt, and so went further south. The Kaffirs told us that, although the Boers had to abandon a great many of their horses and cattle, they yet carried off a large number in their retreat. But though they had been forced to retire, the Boers under Mani Botha soon returned, and with a goodly lot of horses and cattle crossed our block-house line in the beginning of March. They broke through from south to north, near Commando Spruit, and as it was the result of the first big drive down our line it is worth recording.

Towards the middle of March M. Botha, with a party of Free Staatsers and Transvaalers, was located near the Wilge river, having worked their way up to the north of Harrismith. The Transvaalers broke through the columns operat-

Mani Botha. ing in that district and went west; but Mani Botha and his Free Staaters were driven down from the river.

At midnight on April 2nd Mani and Lewis Botha and De Waal, with from one to two hundred Boers and many natives, got through our line from south to north between blockhouses 55 and 56. They were sensible enough to choose a spot at Beginsel, just beyond where we had dug and manned some trenches, and out of reach of our searchlight at Witkopjes Post. That night they spent on the east side of Commando Spruit, near Platrand, and a week later they broke back to the south.

These successful attempts of the Boers to break through our blockhouse lines were always made on very dark and stormy nights, and when the rain was coming down so heavily as to exclude all sights and sounds beyond the distance of a few yards. As the blockhouses were from 800 to 900 yards apart, it was impossible at such times to prevent the Boers from breaking through. The wonder is they did not succeed more often, but a great many attempts which failed were made, and the failures were about three or four to one of the successes.

The total strength of the Vrede Commando was at that time estimated at 400, but the commandant now split up his force into small parties under veldt-cornets, and each party went in

search of the best grazing for their horses, which were in bad condition.

Capture of  
Mani Botha.

But Mani Botha's leadership of the commando was drawing to an end. In an engagement at Wonderpan, near Harrismith, on the night of April 16th, he was seriously wounded, and was conveyed to Boschfontein, a farm south of the Witkopjes; his brother Lewis then took over the command.

Knowledge of his place of retreat was gained by our scouts and sent on to Heilbron, to General Hamilton, who acted upon it and tried to capture the commandant, but without success. By some means the Boers got wind of our intention, and early on the morning of April 23rd they moved their wounded leader to Voorspoed, a place further south. That same night our scouts and a guide went to bring in Mani Botha, but found that he had left, and that a party of Boers, under Van der Merwe was holding the road to Voorspoed. The attempt was abandoned for that time; but subsequently Mani Botha fell into our hands, and when peace was declared he was at Umbilo camp near Durban, doing well, and recovering from his wounds.

A minute account of the Intelligence Department would be too long and too technical for the purpose of this record. Enough has been said to show that at least in the later stages of the war we were not in ignorance of the enemy's

**Signalling.** movements, whatever deficiencies there may have been in our earlier scouting.

And now one word for the signallers, who did their trying work with great care and promptitude. Through them the news gathered by our scouts was passed on to our different stations, and communications in the field kept up which would otherwise have been impossible.

Signalling is not easy work ; to read the lamp and helio correctly requires a great deal of practice. In counting the pauses, and the difference of duration between a dot and a dash, a sense of time is a help in reading messages.

Little mirrors of three and five inches in diameter are ordinarily used for the helio signals ; with a mirror eight inches in diameter a message can be sent as far as eighty miles.

The sunlight in South Africa was so continuous that flags were seldom needed except on wet and foggy mornings ; they were then of great use, and the messages by flags were frequently read from Ingogo to Laing's Nek with the aid of a telescope.

Signallers have to be ready for duty day or night, and often they were kept at work with the lamp all night ; or they would be called up by a sentry who had mistaken a shooting star for a signal. On misty, foggy nights the lights look like little pinheads when the signal stations are at a distance from each other ; and trying to



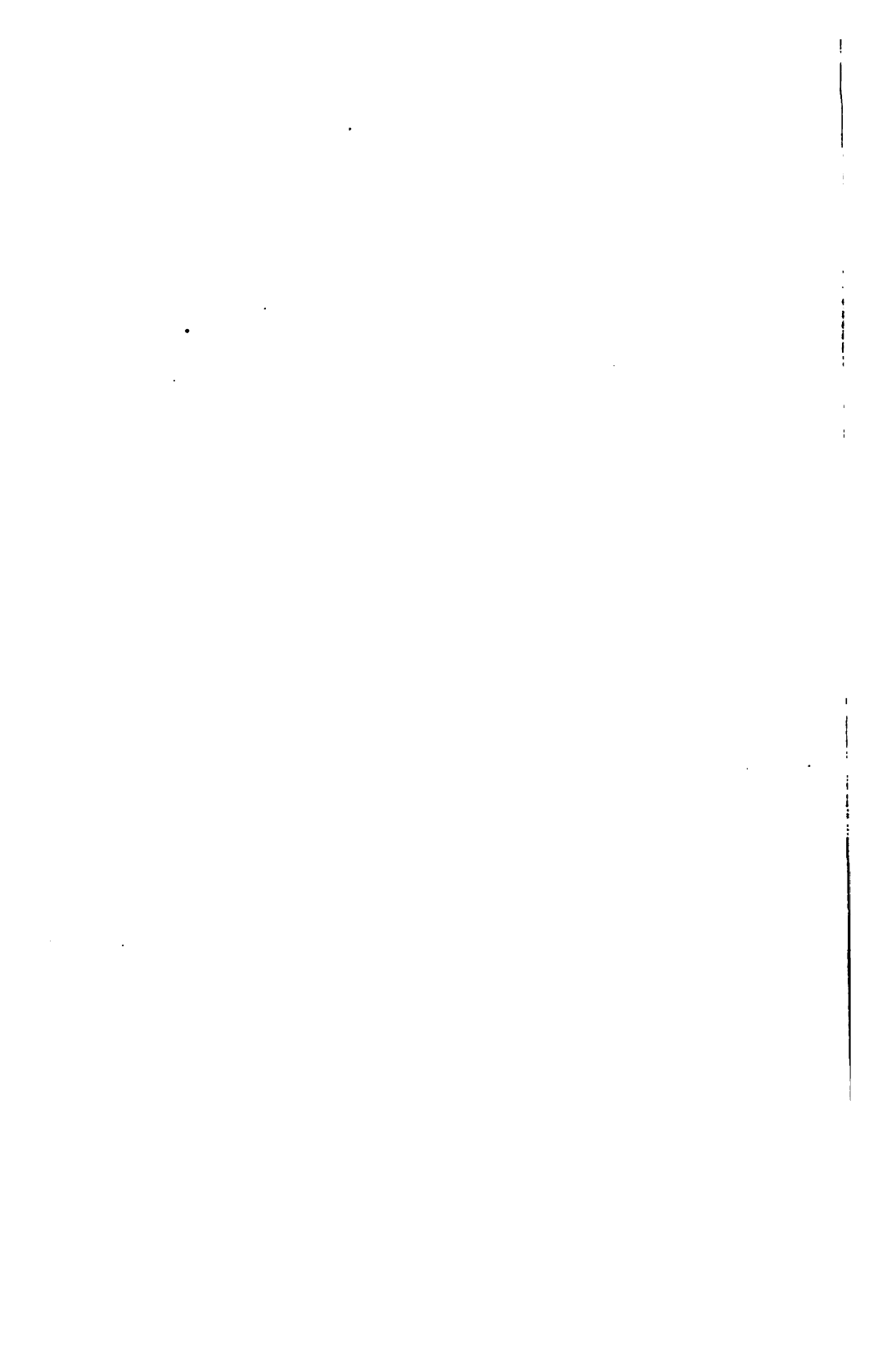
SCOUTS AT AIMING DRILL



SENDING A HELIO MESSAGE

Cork Post. 64 Blockhouse in distance

*To face p. 200*





read the messages, ~~with~~ one eye glued to a telescope, is trying work. Signaller's duties.

When weather, atmosphere, and distance were all against signalling, it was no light responsibility to decipher a message, upon the correct interpretation of which something of the highest importance might depend. On trek the signal-lers had to hold themselves ready to send a message at the shortest notice; and when the day's march was ended they had to form a signal station, and then find the best spots for other stations close to the camping-ground.

At first our staff of signallers consisted of one sergeant, two non-commissioned officers, and twelve privates; but these numbers were afterwards increased to meet the exigencies of active service. The regiment was kept well supplied with 3-inch and 5-inch helios, as well as A and B lamps; the hand lamps used at first were gradually superseded, as they did not carry far enough. After we got to the blockhouse line we had limelight, which on fine nights outdistanced the largest oil lamp; but on clear nights lamp signals could be read a long way off—as far as from Johannesburg to Pretoria, a distance of thirty-five miles.

A good deal of danger as well as hard work is attached to signalling. The stations were necessarily very exposed; they had to be placed as high as possible to catch the sun and be free

Signaller's  
duties.

from shadows, as well as to be in touch with other stations. Besides exposed stations there were other risks. When a column was in a tight corner and ammunition was running short, the signallers were called up, no matter what the time or the weather, to get into communication with the nearest means of relief. Frequently, too, the signallers, owing to their duties, were the last to leave any position from which the force moved off, and this exposed them to the risk of capture.

Upon several occasions the signallers won special commendation: once from General Hildyard, when we were at De Wet's farm in June, 1900; and again from the divisional signalling officer, when we were at Wakkerstrom Hill the first time. In February, 1902, the Director of Signalling personally inspected all the stations on the blockhouse line, and expressed his satisfaction with the way in which the signallers did their work. He especially praised the state of the equipment, and the neatness and accuracy with which the books and records had been kept.

Our scouts and signallers continued to do good work until the end of the war, the closing events of which, in so far as they concerned the York and Lancaster Regiment, have yet to be narrated.

## CHAPTER XIV

### WITH THE MOUNTED INFANTRY

**B**EFORE recounting the few events that yet remain to be chronicled up to the time when Peace was declared, some mention must be made of the York and Lancaster section of the Eastern Company, 2nd Battalion Mounted Infantry. Without it, no record of the regiment in South Africa would be complete. Captain Heath (who was leader of the section) has kindly written an account of their doings; but he prefaces it with an apology for the probable omission of names and details which ought to have been inserted.

It is hardly possible in one chapter to give a full narrative of all that occurred in a period of time extending over nearly three years; but enough has been written to show that the mounted infantry had their full share both of fighting and trekking.

#### CAPTAIN HEATH'S ACCOUNT.

"We left York for Aldershot on Monday, October 9th, 1899; sailed from Southampton on the 24th, and disembarked at Cape Town on

Landing at  
Cape Town,  
1899.

November 19th. The total strength of our section, excluding the Company Quartermaster-Sergeant, was 31.

"The whole of the 2nd Battalion Mounted Infantry was under the command of Brevet Lieut.-Colonel R. J. Tudway, Essex Regiment, with Captain H. L. Ruck-Keene, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, as his adjutant.

"The Northern and Western Companies had sailed a day or two before us.

"The Dublin and Eastern Companies entrained on the jetty at Cape Town as soon as they had disembarked, Private Crowther being detailed to remain at the base in charge of the heavy baggage of the Eastern Company.

"We reached De Aar, 500 miles from Cape Town, early in the morning of the 21st November, and were met at the station by Colonel Tudway; the other two companies had already left for the Colesberg district, and our Commanding Officer followed them later in the day.

"A few days afterwards the Dublin Company were ordered to proceed elsewhere. At this time De Aar, with its huge depot of supplies, etc., was only defended by about 300 men; but early in December the Essex Regiment and Dublin Company Light Infantry arrived, and the Boers' opportunity of making a successful raid was a thing of the past.

"On the 11th the Eastern Company went on a three days' patrol in the direction of Philips-  
town. December,  
1899.

"On the 14th December Colonel Alderson received a telegram saying that Captain Bradshaw, 1st York and Lancaster Regiment, who commanded a company in the 1st Mounted Infantry, had been killed whilst reconnoitring at Zoutpans Drift, about twenty miles east of where the railway crosses the Orange river. A further account of this officer is given later on.

"About this time Sergeant Skelton was appointed Colour-Sergeant of the Eastern Company—a position which he fulfilled admirably—in place of Sergeant Summers, who resigned and became section sergeant of the York and Lancaster section.

"On the 28th December we marched to Britstown, thirty miles west of De Aar, where Colonel Alderson with about 300 mounted troops joined us on the 30th. The next day I was detailed to remain with my section at Britstown, whilst the rest of the force pushed on to Prieska, eighty miles away on the Orange river, where rumour said 1,700 Boers had collected.

"The inhabitants of Britstown, some of whom were loyal, showed their appreciation of our presence by giving the men a tea on New

January, 1900. Year's Day, which was a pleasant change from 'bully beef' and biscuit, and was relished exceedingly.

"Colonel Alderson's column returned from Prieska on the 7th January, 1900, and the next morning we all went back to De Aar in two stages.

"On the 17th we again went to Britstown *en route* for Prieska, where we arrived on the morning of the 25th, having halted for a day at Houwater and at Omdraai's Vley; at the former place we joined a squadron of New South Wales Lancers commanded by a Captain Antill.

"Colonel Alderson with a company of the 1st Mounted Infantry, a squadron of Roberts' Horse, and two guns joined us on the 28th, and the same night we evacuated Prieska and marched eastwards to Orange River Station via Hopetown.

"We reached Orange River Camp on the 2nd February. A huge force was being assembled at this place, but for what purpose we did not know at the time. A day or two later the rest of the 2nd Mounted Infantry arrived; thus for the first time since we left England was the regiment brought together. Colonel Tudway had in the meantime resigned his command, and was succeeded by Brevet Lieut.-Colonel Martyr of Egyptian fame. Before, however, Colonel

Martyr arrived, the command of the three other Paardeberg.  
companies had devolved on Captain De Lisle, and he had done such good work round Colesberg that, on General French's recommendation, he was given command of the newly formed 6th Mounted Infantry, with the local rank of major.

"On Friday, February 9th, the invasion of the Orange Free State began. A week later the battle of Klip Drift was fought, and at the end of a hard day's work, just as it got dark, our led horses were stampeded by shell fire and some Australians galloping through them; luckily we managed to recover them all the next day.

"At Paardeberg our duties were not very heavy, but we had to go some way from the camp every day to get good grazing ground.

"Whilst we were sitting round Cronje's laager the mounted infantry were reorganized, and our Commanding Officer, Colonel Martyr, was given a mounted infantry brigade; Brevet Major Dobell, of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers, succeeded him as officer commanding 2nd Mounted Infantry.

"At the battle of Paardeberg Lieutenant Courtney of the Dublin Company was killed.

"At the battles of Poplar Grove and Driefontein our casualties were very slight, and we entered Bloemfontein with Lord Roberts' army on the 13th March, 1900.

"However, we were not left in peace for long;

**Sanna's Post.** on the 17th or 18th March the 2nd Mounted Infantry was ordered to send one company with General Broadwood's force to Thaba N'chu, and our Commanding Officer decided to pick out the best horses for this purpose, and mount a composite company under the command of Captain Brooke. Captain Atkins detailed the York and Lancaster section for this duty, and I was given the least weary horses in the Eastern Company. The other sections were the Bedfords, Royal Welsh Fusiliers, and Worcesters. We marched to Thaba N'chu in three days, and the 2nd Mounted Infantry company was ordered to hold a place called Israel's Poort, about four miles west of the town. Here our time was fully occupied in patrolling and collecting rifles from burghers who had returned to their farms.

"At Sanna's Post on the Koorn Spruit we luckily had very few casualties ; in fact I think the only men we lost were those captured with the convoy, amongst whom was Private Coates.

"A few days before were treated from Thaba N'chu two or three of the section had reported sick—to the best of my recollection they were Privates Humphries, Revill, and Grasby—and it was many a long month before I saw any of them again. I must take this opportunity of remarking that, for the first year of the war, whenever a man reported sick and was sent to hospital, he was absolutely lost to the regiment



for months to come ; mounted infantry details were sent anywhere but back to their regiments. Poor Private Turtle was killed whilst with Colonel Hickman's force—but I anticipate. April, 1900.

“After two or three days' rest at Springfield Farm, near Bloemfontein, the 2nd Mounted Infantry was ordered to relieve the 6th Mounted Infantry at Karee Kloof, some thirty miles north of the town, and hold the outpost line opposite Brandfort, which was occupied by the enemy. The duties here were very heavy, and we all rejoiced when, on the 19th April, we were ordered to march in to Bloemfontein to refit. But our joy was short-lived, for on the very morning after we arrived in Bloemfontein we were ordered to go out to Thaba N'chu on a four days' trek, as we were told ; but we did not see Bloemfontein again for a year and four months. So we patched up our rags once more and started.

“Whilst we were at Karee Kloof a fresh organization of mounted infantry had been sprung upon us, and we now found ourselves in the 6th Corps and 2nd Brigade of Mounted Infantry. General Ridley commanded the brigade, and Lieut.-Colonel Legge the 6th Corps, which consisted of ourselves, Kitchener's Horse, and a couple of Maxims under Lieutenant Stevenson, R.F.A. ; these Maxims were afterwards replaced by a pom-pom.

“In the fighting round Thaba N'chu on the

April-June, 1900. 26th April, Lieutenant Geary, of the Northern Company, was killed.

"On the 30th April General Ian Hamilton began his advance from Thaba N'chu, and, after fighting till dark at Houtnek, we forced our way through the pass on the morning of the 31st.

"On the 4th May about 4,000 of the enemy were drawn up across our line of advance; suddenly from the west another force of Boers appeared riding hard to join their comrades. Just about where they would meet was a ridge extending east and west for four or five miles. The cavalry on the right dashed forward, two miles further to the west the 6th Corps, with the 2nd Mounted Infantry leading, did the same, and the position was successfully rushed. A few months afterwards I saw a lurid picture of the Household Cavalry and Kitchener's Horse waving their swords (Kitchener's Horse with swords!) and wildly charging—no mention of the Mounted Infantry.

"Ridley's Brigade formed part of General Ian Hamilton's army throughout his great march through Winburg, over the Sand river, through Ventersburg to Kroonstad; thence eastwards to Lindley, north to Heilbron, west to Vredefort Road Station, north again to the Vaal river at Lindeque Drift, and on to Johannesburg, where the army halted for a few days.

"On the 5th June we entered Pretoria, marched

past Lord Roberts in the central square, and out to a place called Silverton, where we were on outpost duty. The next day we went down the railway again a little way to Irene, where we halted for the night and disturbed a private zoological gardens ; I fancy some of the men feasted on fresh-killed koodoo. Thence we advanced to Zwavelpoort, and after the armistice of the 8th June took part in the battle of Diamond Hill on the 11th and 12th, then on to Elandsfontein Station on the Middleburg line, and eventually got back to Pretoria late at night on the 16th June.

June and July,  
1900.

"On the 19th we marched southwards via Heidelberg, Frankfort, Reitz to Bethlehem, where we arrived on the 8th July. I think it was at this place that Private Rutt went into hospital, and very sorry I was to lose him. In a few more days Broadwood's brigade and Ridley's brigade were on the heels of De Wet. We crossed the railway at Roodewal Station about the 23rd July, and reached Vredefort on the 24th. At this place the 6th Corps had a sharp brush with the enemy and captured a few of De Wet's grain wagons. The 2nd Mounted Infantry had five officers hit, two very badly. On this occasion civil surgeon Howse, who was doctor to the 2nd Mounted Infantry, behaved with the greatest gallantry, for which he was afterwards awarded the Victoria Cross.

July-August,  
1900.

Our Commanding Officer was wounded, and the command of the regiment now devolved on Captain Atkins ; and, as Lieutenants Dwyer and Taylor were both wounded, and Lieutenant Vigers was now the adjutant, the command of the Eastern Company fell on me.

“Two weeks later De Wet broke away to the north, and we were after him again over the Vaal, over the Gatsrand, across the railway at Welvediend, over the Witwatersrand, to see him pass peacefully through the Magaliesberg at Olifants Nek, which was not held. Then came the news of Colonel Hore being in difficulties, so we trekked north-west to the place where he was surrounded near the Elands river on the Zeerust-Rustenburg road.

“After this we went eastwards through Rustenburg to Wolhuter’s Kop, from which place we had an excellent view of De Wet climbing over the Magaliesberg on his way back to the Free State ; needless to say we did not know at the time who was with the commando, and it was even suggested that they were Roberts’ Horse who had been sent out in that direction !

“At last we were going into Pretoria, and we gaily trekked along ; but, alas, shortly before reaching Commando Nek we were dispatched on a flying column to Bethany under General Smith-Dorrien. However, it only meant another two or three days, and we really did get into

Pretoria about the 26th August, 1900, and had a thorough rest and refit. Sept.-Dec.  
1900.

"About the 4th September we were off again, and for many months remained in the Magaliesberg district under General Clements. On the 16th September Colour-Sergeant Skelton and Private Green, of the York and Lancaster section, were wounded in a small rearguard action. The former, I am sorry to say, was eventually invalided home. He was a great loss to the company.

"On the 11th November we put into Krugersdorp for a day or two. In a few more days General Clements was busy again scrapping with Delarey, and on the 13th December the Boers attacked in force at Nooitgedacht. The 2nd Mounted Infantry had the post of honour in the retreat and lost very heavily. At this engagement I was not present, as I had been at Krugersdorp with some large drafts for the regiment, and was then on the way from Krugersdorp to Commando Nek to rejoin, which I did on the 14th December.

"About the 18th December Brevet-Major Vandeleur, of the Irish Guards, took over command of the 2nd Mounted Infantry, as Captain Atkins had been killed on the 13th. Lieut.-Colonel Cookson had succeeded to the command of the 6th Corps *vice* Colonel Legge, killed on the 13th.

January, 1900.

"The 2nd Mounted Infantry was now up to strength again. Corporal Norgate had brought a draft of (I think) fourteen men from the 1st Battalion York and Lancaster Regiment for the section.

"On the 1st January, 1901, we were camped at Wolhuter's Kop on the Pretoria-Rustenburg road. A day or two later we advanced westwards to Buffelspoort, where we remained some days, whilst Rustenburg was being filled up with supplies.

"On the 17th Brigadier-General Cunningham took over command of our column, and General Clements went into Pretoria.

"On the 20th we 'drove' the Magaliesberg to the west as far as Olifants Nek, and captured a few prisoners and a lot of women and children, who were hiding in the rocks.

"On the night of the 23rd we camped at a place called Middelfontein (rechristened Muddelfontein by wags), a few miles south of Olifants Nek in very broken country. Our camp was commanded on all sides, and when we tried to move the next morning, we found we were hemmed in. Corporal Owen, of the York and Lancaster section, was wounded early in the day, and Major Vandeleur (our Commanding Officer) not long afterwards; so Captain Brooke took command of the regiment, and, except for a fortnight, retained the command till the end of

the war. We had several other casualties, but no more in the York and Lancaster section as far as I remember. Jan.-March,  
1901.

"On the 25th General Babington came to our assistance, and we managed to join hands with him.

"We reached Krugersdorp on the afternoon of the 30th, and the same night the 2nd Mounted Infantry were sent with some infantry from Krugersdorp to the assistance of a post at Modderfontein in the Gatsrand. Unluckily we were not in time to relieve them, and General Cunningham joined us the next evening with the rest of the column.

"During the month of February we operated in the country between the Vaal river and the Krugersdorp-Klerksdorp railway.

"About the beginning of March the 6th Corps Mounted Infantry was detached from General Cunningham's command, and, together with the 8th Mounted Infantry, and another pom-pom, formed a column under Lieut.-Colonel Shekelton. At this time too, three officers joined us to take command of different sections in the Eastern Company: Lieutenant Gruchy for the Leicester section, Lieutenant Webber for the Connaught Rangers, and Second Lieutenant Pratt for the York and Lancaster section.

"On the 7th March we were again in Krugersdorp, and entrained for Potchefstroom at mid-

March-April, 1901. — night on the 8th, and operated in that district under General Babington's orders for the rest of the month.

"On the 24th we had an enjoyable day, hunting Delarey's convoy. Babington's mounted troops were on our right, two or three miles away, the 6th Corps Mounted Infantry in the centre (with Eastern Company 2nd Mounted Infantry leading), and the 8th Mounted Infantry on the left. Mile after mile we covered, splashing through small spruits, click-clacking over rocks, and swearing every time we topped a rise in the veldt and saw the convoy edging off to the right. We caught up the rear wagons after covering eight or nine miles; a gun drawn by a team of mules driven from the limber tried to break away, but two or three men were after it at once. The driver would not halt, so—bang—and the mules zigzagged across the veldt with the limber and gun wriggling behind them. On the whole a most successful day, resulting in the capture of 140 to 150 prisoners besides wagons and guns.

"At the end of March Lieut.-Colonel Sir Henry Rawlinson took over command of our column from Colonel Shekelton.

"On 15th April we surprised a small laager at dawn and captured two guns, a few wagons and thirty prisoners. Three days later we were treated to a magnificent artillery display on the



hills behind the village of Hartebeestefontein. May, 1901.  
In the beginning of May General Fetherstonhaugh took over command of the troops in this part of the country.

"At this time we had a couple of days' rest at Brakspruit on the Schoon Spruit, and about the 6th May started on our westward trek to the Mafeking railway, where we arrived on the 13th at Maribogo siding.

"On the 15th we marched to Geysdorp, and on the 22nd reached Wolmaranstat, where we halted for one day; thence to Klerksdorp, which we reached four days later. Here Lieutenant Pratt rejoined us, having spent the last three weeks in hospital. Whilst we were at Klerksdorp we received some cases of warm clothing which had been sent out from England at the end of 1899, and very glad we were to get them.

"On the 30th May Rawlinson's column (strengthened by two companies of the Cheshire Regiment and a couple of Elswick guns) left Klerksdorp, and marched northwards via Ventersdorp to the broken country between the high veldt and Olifants Nek and Magata's Nek in the Magaliesberg range. Four columns were operating under General Fetherstonhaugh, but we only captured a lot of wagons with women and children and a few fighting Boers.

"From this part we went westwards to the

June-August,  
1901.

Elands river, where Hore's laager had been surrounded ; then back again to Klerksdorp on the 24th June.

" I now went up to Johannesburg to see the dentist, and the column had moved before I returned. They operated in the Lichtenburg and Zeerust districts, and were back again in Klerksdorp on the 20th July. On the night of the 22nd-23rd we made a fruitless expedition up the Schoon Spruit, and on the 24th trekked via Koekemor, Potchefstroom, Venterskroon, Lindique Drift, Parys to Vredefort. Thence we marched southwards.

" On the 4th August the Eastern Company made a large haul of sheep with a few burghers in charge ; but they turned out to be 'tame Boers,' and under the command of Sergeant Roebuck, late of the 1st York and Lancaster Regiment !

" On the 11th August we camped at Floradale, close to Bloemfontein, moving the next day to Glen on the railway, where we halted for a few days.

" On the 15th we marched to Boesman's Kop on the Thaba N'chu road ; thence southwards, and operated in the Dewetsdorp Zastron country. On the 25th the Eastern Company and one section of the Western had a nice little hunt all to themselves, and captured eighteen Boers. Both Lieutenant Pratt's and Colour-

Sergeant Gilliard's horses came down when galloping over rocky ground: the former had his collar-bone broken, and the latter his right arm. We put into the line at Edenburg the next day. August-Sept.  
1901.

"On the 29th we marched again in an easterly direction to Wepener, where I made the acquaintance of the bearded lady who used to be in Barnum's show. Our camp was blazed into one night whilst we were in this district by about twenty-five Boers, who had found a weak point in the outpost; however, they soon made off. Two of my own horses were shot; otherwise I do not think there were any casualties. We reached Aliwal North on the 12th September.

"On the 16th we marched out a few miles to watch the approaches to the Orange river. On the 20th we received sudden orders to be ready to entrain at Burghersdorp on the 22nd; so we at once packed up and returned to Aliwal North, reached Burghersdorp midday on the 22nd, and at once started to entrain.

"We detrained at Elandsfontein junction on the 24th; some of the column did not get in till early the next morning. On the 26th we were again on the trek and put in at Greylingstad on the 4th October. The same night we moved out again in hopes of surprising a Boer laager, but we went a mile too far to the west, so just

Oct.-Dec. 1901. missed. The Eastern Company on the right flank captured about seven prisoners and Hans Botha's Cape cart. On this occasion Private Timbrill (York and Lancaster section) was severely wounded in the stomach. On the 10th we returned to Greylingstad. Colour-Sergeant Gilliard returned to duty on the 12th October, and Lieutenant Pratt not long afterwards.

"For the rest of the month we operated in the Standerton and Volksrust districts, picking up a few prisoners most days. On the 30th October we put in at Volksrust, where three companies of the 1st York and Lancaster Regiment were quartered. That was a great day for the section, as many of us had never seen anything of the regiment since leaving England.

"During November and December we were in the Ermelo district under General Bruce Hamilton. This was a period of successful night marches. I suppose none of us could honestly say we liked marching at night, but time after time during these two months the sight of the Boor laager at our feet in the early dawn more than compensated for any discomfort we might have suffered during the few preceding hours. During the first fortnight of December, 1901, General Bruce Hamilton's columns obtained the following results: killed, 27; wounded, 20; captured, 297; surrenders, 25; rifles, 323; S.A.A., 8,123 rounds; wagons,

64 ; carts, 88 ; mules, 52 ; cattle, 6,920 ; horses, 259 ; refugees, 126 ; one 15-pr. gun, and four heliographs. Our column during this period covered 273 miles. Jan.-Feb.  
1902.

"On the 15th January, 1902, we left Ermelo *en route* for Standerton, where we arrived on the 17th. On the 20th I heard that poor Private Lowe had died of enteric.

"On the 21st we marched southwards and operated in the Vrede district for the next fortnight, drawing supplies from Harrismith on the 1st February. Lieut.-Colonel Scott, commanding 'P' battery, now took over command of our column, as Colonel Rawlinson had three small columns under him. About this time Private Yeardley of the section went into hospital ; he had not been away from the Eastern Company for a single day since we left England, and I have the pony which he drew from the remount department in November, 1899, in my possession at the present moment (18th January, 1903).

"On the 2nd February we were off once more to get into position for the first organized 'drive,' at the end of which we found ourselves at Wolverhoek on the main railway line to Pretoria on the 8th instant. Total result, 284 Boer casualties. Never since the attack on Cronje's laager at Paardeberg had I heard such a roar of musketry as on the last night of that

Feb. - March,  
1902. drive when we were outside Heilbron—he must have been a bold Boer who broke through that night.

“Shortly after this I left the 2nd Mounted Infantry to perform the duties of acting staff officer to Colonel Scott, but was of course still with the column. On the 19th February we were in Standerton, and I saw Privates Timbrill (who had been wounded) and Keyworth, who was recovering from an attack of enteric.

“We then got into position for another drive towards Harrismith and crossed *en route* the blockhouse line from Botha’s Pass, which was held by the 1st York and Lancaster Regiment. After this we were placed on the extreme left of the drive, and had to get along as fast as we could, right on the top of the Drakensberg Mountains. One day we were ten hours covering three miles. However, it was a most successful drive, for 850 prisoners were taken, besides thousands of heads of cattle. We got into Harrismith on the 1st March.

“Then we had another drive to the west, and on reaching the railway line were ordered to proceed to Klerksdorp, in which district Lord Methuen had just met with a reverse. We reached Klerksdorp on the 21st March, and on the night of the 23rd started on the longest march we had yet done. Several columns marched west from the neighbourhood of

Klerksdorp that night, passed beyond the scattered Boer laagers, and shortly after dawn formed line forty miles from Klerksdorp, and then drove back to the east. We got into camp about 9 p.m. on the 24th instant, having covered over eighty miles in twenty-six hours. None of the columns from Klerksdorp could have marched much less than seventy-five miles, and one or two must have gone a few more miles than we had. We returned to the town on the 25th March, and had a week's halt, of which we were badly in need.

April-May,  
1902.

"The month of April we spent operating in the Lichtenburg district, and in the early part of May we made a sweeping movement in conjunction with other columns over to the Mafeking line, thus capturing about 350 prisoners. We drew supplies at Devondale siding, not far from Vryburg, on the 14th May, and in ten days' time were back again at Klerksdorp, thus ending our last trek.

"Peace having been declared we started disbanding the 2nd Mounted Infantry about the 20th June.

"At this time, to the best of my recollection, the following men of the original section were still serving in the 2nd Mounted Infantry :

"Colour-Sergeant Gilliard (Colour-Sergeant, Eastern Company), Sergeant Owen (Section Sergeant), Corporal Naylor (Master Cook to

Captain  
Bradshaw.

2nd Mounted Infantry), Privates Staniforth, Lee, Abbott, Norburn, Green, Stevens, Lacey, Coates, Currell (shoeing smith), Wright (shoeing smith).

"For many months too Sergeant Norgate had been performing the duties of Company Quartermaster-Sergeant to the Eastern Company.

"If it were ever my good fortune to again have command of a mounted infantry company for service in the field, I ask for nothing better than to have the above-mentioned non-commissioned officers and men to form the nucleus thereof."

Captain Bradshaw, whose death at Zoutpans Drift is mentioned by Captain Heath, had obtained the command of a company in the 1st Battalion of Mounted Infantry, and gone out with them in October, 1899. From De Aar he received an order on the 29th of November to proceed with his company to Orange river for patrolling work. On the 13th of December it was reported that a party of Boers were lying in wait to snipe the daily patrol at Zoutpans Drift, and he solicited and obtained permission to try to cut them off. His force, which consisted of sixty mounted infantry with two officers and twenty guides under Lieutenant McFarlane, started at 7 a.m., crossed to the north side of the Orange river, and arrived at a block called Ramah about



five miles from Zoutpans Drift. A farmer there reported that the Boers were momentarily expected to appear, as he had been warned that they intended to commandeer his stock that morning. They did not, however, do so, and after a halt of two hours a Kaffir boy came in with the intelligence that about thirty of the enemy were actually at the drift (it was found afterwards that there were about 100 of them). A short consultation was held and an attack was decided upon; so the force saddled up and set off for Zoutpans Drift, led by the native boy who had brought the news. What followed can be best described in the words of a letter from one of the subaltern officers who was present.

Zoutpans  
Drift, Dec. 13,  
1899.

“ His [Captain Bradshaw’s] orders were as follows: thirty mounted infantry, two officers and he himself should attack in front, while twenty guides under a sergeant should outflank them on our left. The remainder of the mounted infantry, under an attached officer, should remain in support. We came suddenly on the Boers, dismounted, and opened fire. I was on the left, while he was on the right. The last order I heard him give was to advance, and we all rushed forward. Immediately afterwards I heard that the captain was wounded, and that the next senior was to take command. . . . His orderly, who was killed a few minutes later, told

Captain  
Bradshaw's  
death.

me that he had followed his captain as he rushed forward ; when the former was hit he fell, leaning on his left arm and waving his right hand, presumably meaning the support to advance. He was mortally wounded through the left lung . . . and immediately after he fell a second bullet killed him instantly, passing through the brain. . . . Eventually the Boers retired and we brought back his body. We buried him with our other dead in the cemetery here, with military honours, on December 15th."

The following extract (inserted by permission) from a letter from Colonel Alderson, commanding mounted infantry in Africa, cannot fail to be a source of deep gratification to all his friends and comrades :

" He [Captain Bradshaw] had not previously served with me in the mounted infantry, but I had heard from my predecessor at Aldershot (Col. Hon. F. Stopford) what a good officer he was, and he was thus one of those expressly asked for. In the short time I saw him out here, I formed a very high opinion of him as a soldier. He was most wonderfully keen regarding his profession, and this, combined with the tact and sound judgement which he possessed, made him an exceptionally good and reliable officer. His invariable cheerfulness, and his method and determination in overcoming and putting aside difficulties, made him most popular

with both officers and men. On the 29th November last I was ordered to send a company from here to Orange river to do the patrolling work there, and I selected his company for this duty. I remember remarking to my adjutant that I was quite happy in sending Bradshaw off on his own account, or words to that effect. After he arrived there I heard from Colonel Wauchope (who knew him in Egypt), who was in command, that he was 'very glad to have Captain Bradshaw.' During the few days that he was at Orange river he did some very hard and good work with patrols. . . . There seems to be no doubt that it was his very dash which cost him his life. The price, however, is too high, and, looking at it from a purely selfish, or rather from a mounted infantry point of view, I can only say that I do not know where to find an officer to replace him."

Col. Alderson's account.

## CHAPTER XV

### PEACE

**W**HILE our work on the blockhouse line, described in a previous chapter, had been going on, the six months which had elapsed since the failure of the Proclamation had not been uneventful in the general history of the war. The suppression of the scattered Boer commandos was a longer and a harder task than had been expected. They had overrun the country in all directions, even invading Cape Colony again, which had made it necessary at the beginning of October to proclaim martial law throughout that colony. There had been many engagements, with varying results, and the occasions on which the Boers had repulsed or defeated us served unluckily to keep alive false hopes on their part, and encouraged them to continue the fight.

Considerable extensions had been made in our blockhouse lines, and the Boer Generals, Botha, De Wet, Delarey, Viljoen and others, were constantly attacking them, and endeavouring to evade the ever-narrowing net of blockhouse

lines and columns. The National Scout Corps had been formed at the beginning of December, consisting of burghers who were by that time convinced of the futility of prolonging the war, and who recognized that the sooner it could be ended the better it would be for their nation and their country. In spite of some reverses the balance of success was steadily increasing on our side, and the final close of the guerilla war was but a question of time. It may be as well to say here that the word "guerilla," although it describes an irregular mode of warfare, is not used as a term of abuse, nor yet as synonymous with the term "brigand," a meaning which unluckily seems to have been attached to it by some of the Boers.

National  
Scouts, 1902.

Slowly but surely the utter hopelessness of the struggle was dawning even on the Boers still in the field. On March 23rd the Transvaal Peace Delegates visited Pretoria under a flag of truce, to confer with Lord Kitchener, and, having done so, they proceeded to Kroonstadt for the purpose of discussing with the Orange Free Staatsers the terms of a possible surrender.

To arrange a Peace Conference between the Boers and ourselves was not easy. Neither the Transvaalers nor the Free Staatsers had a single ruler or leader in sole authority with whom to treat. The Transvaal President was in Europe; the Orange Free State President

Peace  
Delegates.

was a homeless wanderer in his own country ; and there were many influential commandants dispersed in different parts of the vast arena who must be consulted before any ultimate settlement could be made. The difficulty of finding them was great ; these leaders were constantly on the move to escape the columns, and that being so, they hardly thought it prudent to leave an address behind. To bring these scattered authorities together, and find, amongst so many conflicting interests and opinions, a central point on which all would agree, required both time and tact.

From Kroonstadt, the delegates moved, on April 9th, to Klerksdorp, where they were joined by Steyn, Delarey, and De Wet. On the 12th they were back in Pretoria to lay the result of their consultation before Lord Kitchener. Six days later they dispersed to carry the proffered terms to their respective commandos, and counsel or consult them as the case might be.

The fighting force of the Boers remained out on commando while the negotiations went on. Their leaders went to and fro between our lines, with free passes signed by Lord Kitchener and De Wet ; living on the best we had to give them, whilst they fought word battles over terms and phrases. It was an anomaly, but an inevitable one ; it would have

been impossible to grant an armistice to cover the necessary length of time for such transactions. The Boers were deliberate and cautious, and everything had to be referred home to England, which meant further delay.

Peace Conferences, 1902.

This being so, these peace conferences made little difference to our life on the Vrede block-house line. The Boers continued their raids, sometimes succeeding in breaking through, at other times being repulsed. At the latter end of April special meetings were summoned for burghers in the field to discuss peace terms. One of these was convened by Louis Botha at Heilbron, and it was very interesting to see the burghers with their white flags coming in to the conference.

The Boers on commando got rather tired of being without their leaders, and some of them even helioed to Tweekopjes Post to ask when they might expect their leaders back, as they wanted to go on fighting and did not desire peace. This pretence of wishing to continue the war was kept up by all the Boers who came through our line. They vowed they were having a good time and enjoying their present life; but their starved horses, and their own appearance, clothed in home-made skin garments and head and foot gear, told a very different tale. Naturally we assumed a similar attitude, and said the longer the war went on the better

May, 1902. pleased we should be; our mode of life was cheap, and we were saving money. Probably we were mutually aware that each side was, in reality, deadly tired of the whole thing, and each equally unwilling to say so.

Throughout May we heard great rumours of peace, but beyond rumours everything was kept strictly secret, and peace did not fall to our lot. The delegates, we knew, were holding a big conference at Vereeniging, commencing on May 16th, and on the 18th they went once more to Pretoria to confer with Lord Milner and Lord Kitchener. Here they waited for the British Government's final decision, and, having received this, they returned on the 29th to Vereeniging to put the question of acceptance or rejection of our terms to the casting vote.

Two days later, on the now historic day of Saturday, May 31st, the conditions of surrender were signed.

Even then the intelligence did not reach us until a full week later. The following is an account given in a letter written home at the time, and dated Klip River, June 17th: "So peace has been declared! Of course we are all delighted at the prospect. We first heard the good news yesterday morning (Sunday, June 8th), but do not yet know the terms, except what five Boers can tell us, who have come in to pay us a friendly visit. These men belonged to Hels-







**DISINTERRING THE RIFLE OF A SURRENDERED BOER**

The Kaffir boy with rifle told us where it was buried

dinger's command, and say De Wet has issued Peace.  
strict orders that not a single man is to be allowed to stop out on commando. They are on their way to surrender at Reitz, and seem only too pleased to come in. The Boers north of our line have gone up to Standerton to surrender, those south of the line going to Bethlehem. The Wakkerstrom Commando has come in to Newcastle, most of them in a very bad way, sick and wounded."

The account goes on to say: "We have had the commandant of the Vrede Commando (Lewis Botha) in to see us, and he stayed the night. I went out with him to meet the Vrede Commando south of the line at a farm about twelve miles south of our Klip River Post. Twenty of the men surrendered now who had not given in their arms before, because their ponies were, so they said, too done up to carry them. They were very glad to hear they would get ten days' rations free. One veldt-cornet asked if sardines were included in the allowance, as he was very fond of them and had not tasted them for three years.

"I took their arms and ammunition in a Cape cart, back to camp, and they had passes, enabling them to come and go freely. One of them remarked to me: 'Well, I can talk more English than you can talk Dutch, and I mean to talk English now.'

**Surrenders.** "What the Boers felt most of all was giving up their rifles. They looked upon these as friends with whom they had grown up from boyhood, and from whom it was hard to part ; and many of those who lived in out of the way districts told us they feared that the Kaffirs would take advantage of their being without firearms. But their confidence in our willingness to help and protect them, was vastly increased when it was made known that all who could not afford to pay should have ten days' rations free, as well as as the loan of transport to take them back to their farms.

"Giving out the ten days' rations for themselves and their families adds considerably to the already heavy work of the Quartermaster ; and making out so many forms and certificates takes up a lot of our time."

Our representatives for the King's Coronation (Captain Armstrong, three non-commissioned officers, and seven men) left us on June 2nd ; the last of our Volunteers, under Lieut. Longden, went home early in the month, and towards the end of it we sent home 100 men of Section D and 1st class Army Reserve.

After peace was declared, every bit of barbed wire had to be rolled up into coils again, on wooden drums. Even with the help of the Engineers and Kaffirs this was not finished for over a month ; it was a tiresome job, as a cut





A MIDDAY HALT

Near De Wet's Farm, June, 1900

*To face p. 235*

from one of the barbs produced veldt sores from which many of the men suffered. Leaving  
Klip River.

Not before the beginning of July was the last coil of barbed wire rolled on its drum, and the task of clearing up the line completed. Then, and not till then, were we able to turn our backs upon Klip river and the empty blockhouses which were left standing. B, C, G, H Companies, under Major Scholes, were the first to leave, and on July 8th the rest of us moved down by easy stages to Newcastle. We had to start work at six o'clock in the morning, loading up all the stores, and clearing out from the place which had been our home for so many months. By midday we were off, and after five hours' marching reached Botha's Pass, the highest point on our blockhouse line, and where as usual a strong wind was blowing.

The next day's march brought us to De Wet's farm; here we pitched camp near the stream, at almost the same spot where we had encamped on the Sunday previous to the Botha's Pass engagement of June 8th, 1900. There was a striking contrast between our nights then, in the stress of war, and our nights now, when peace had come. Then, at the end of a hard day's march, there were always more hills to climb and outpost duty to be done. Now we could quietly pitch our tents with the assured prospect of a good night's rest to follow.

Newcastle,  
July, 1902.

The relief was great—so great, in fact, that we could hardly realize it at first after the two and a half years of danger and unrest.

On the third day after leaving Klip river we struck our camp at 7 a.m., moved off two hours later, and shortly after noon entered Newcastle on July 10th. Our camp here was well situated, considerably warmer and less windy than Klip River Post by reason of being 4,000 ft. lower. We formed part of an infantry brigade at Newcastle, together with Munster Fusiliers, Middlesex, and Inniskillen Fusiliers; the 6th Dragoon Guards were also in the town. The place was full of civilians too, who were doing a rare trade, trying to make up for lost time.

And now, the campaign being over, and the York and Lancaster Regiment no longer on active service, little remains to be chronicled. Parades and fatigues were chiefly the order of the day until the battalion left Newcastle. Unluckily an outbreak of scarlet fever occurred just as we were leaving, and we had to be isolated in companies for a few weeks before embarking for Mhow, Bombay, which we reached in November, 1902.

This imperfect record of our share in the South African war is at an end, and the writer feels that he has not done justice to his theme. A more graphic pen than his is needed to make the past live again. The long, scorching days;



the seemingly endless nights; the ever present burden of responsibility, which weighed more and more heavily as the days went by, and the wished-for goal receded from us; the incessant watchfulness and wariness of an adversary whose alertness called for corresponding alertness on our part, even when soul and body alike felt worn out by the long strain—how is it possible to convey in words the reality of these things, or reproduce the grip of war when war is over?—War too in a country so tremendous and primeval, and with a people whose outlook on life differs so radically from our own. Any one who has entered at all into the spirit of that wonderful South Africa must feel with overwhelming force the difficulty of reproducing its atmosphere and its life, more especially so to those at home who only know the over-civilization and overcrowding of the mother country.

It is hard to look with unclouded eyes on the track which the war chariot has so recently made. We cannot forget that England and her Colonies have shed some of their best blood, and we remember the names of many who have fallen and who are buried where their life-work ended. The fight has been fought, but its results have still to be worked out—results so far-reaching that perhaps we of this generation, who have striven our hardest, will never see them fully accomplished. We have learned at

Conclusion.

a bitter cost to know the worth of the Boer as an enemy; we have now to learn his worth as a friend. Heaven grant our second lesson will necessitate less time and suffering than our first one has done.

## APPENDICES

A. LIST OF OFFICERS AND COL.-SERGTS. ON BOARD MAJESTIC.

B. CASUALTY LISTS.

C. MENTIONS AND HONOURS.

D. ARMY ORDERS.

E. MOUNTED INFANTRY.

F. WAKKERSTROM GARRISON.

G. MEDICAL OFFICERS.

H. MEDAL LIST.



## APPENDIX A

THE following are the Officers and Colour-Sergeants of the Regiment who went out on board the Majestic :

Colonel : Lt.-Col. W. J. Kirkpatrick.  
 2nd in command : Major F. L. Lousada.  
 Adjutant : Lieut. M. F. Halford.  
 Transport Officer : 2nd Lieut. J. F. Coston.  
 Sergeant-Major Crowe.  
 Orderly Room Sergeant : J. Briggs.  
 Quartermaster : Lieut. M. J. Duggan.  
 Quartermaster-Sergeant : J. Birch.

### LIST OF COMPANIES AND OFFICERS :

- A. Capt. A. Cobbold, 2nd Lieut. J. Coke, Col.-Sergt. Acheson.
- B. Lieut. F. B. Isherwood, 2nd Lieut. G. H. Wedgwood, Col.-Sergt. Milgate.
- C. Lieut. W. E. Sykes, 2nd Lieut. H. W. Duckworth, Col.-Sergt. Christian.
- D. Capt. A. Hyde, 2nd Lieut. A. H. C. Kearsey, Col.-Sergt. Stewart.
- E. Major H. S. Scholes, 2nd Lieuts. D. D. Wilson and A. St. John Blunt, Col.-Sergt. Mayfield.
- F. Capt. J. H. Armstrong, 2nd Lieut. L. A. Bethell, Col.-Sergt. Elliot.
- G. Capt. S. E. D. Webbe, Lieut. G. Capron, Lieut. H. R. Headlam, Col.-Sergt. Hulley.
- H. Lieut. L. Brandreth, 2nd Lieut. T. W. Parkinson, 2nd Welsh Regiment, Col.-Sergt. Gates.

## APPENDIX B

### CASUALTY LISTS.

*Killed in action, Venter's Spruit, 20th January, 1900.*

Reg. No.	Rank and Name.	Reg. No.	Rank and Name.
3350	Sgt. Good, D.	3280	Sgt. Bowen, B.
4898	Pte. Hall, H.	5164	Pte. Broughten, J.
3025	Millan, W.	815	Reid, J. H.
2277	Simcock, J.		
5233	Pte. Philpott, A., wounded and taken prisoner by the enemy. Died in Pretoria, Feb. 2nd, 1900.		

*Wounded, Venter's Spruit, 20th January, 1900.*

2nd Lt. H. W. Duckworth, wound, leg.

A. H. C. Kearsay, wound, chest.

Reg. No.	Rank and Name.	Reg. No.	Rank and Name.
1326	Pte. Myers, T.	2619	Pte. Gribbon, J.
2608	Halley, H.	4946	O'Callaghan, W. M.
5217	L.-Cpl. Bateson, T.	2983	Kitching, W.
4623	Pte. Kempster, J. F.	3003	Precious, J.
3824	Hough, R.	3686	Sgt. Elliott, H.
5256	Winter, S.	5101	L.-Cpl. Grove, A. L.
3020	Mitchell, A.	5314	Pte. Davies, T.
5272	Wiseman, J. A.	2606	Gaskill, W.
3041	Cpl. Radford, B.	5189	Hartley, T.
4894	Pte. Baxter, L.	2677	Marshall, J.
4651	Edley, J. E.	1200	Shirtcliffe, G.
5317	Gill, S.	3514	Cpl. Long, J.
3895	Johns, S.	3306	Pte. Barter, A.
4119	Machin, J.	3073	Malin, J.
2768	Cpl. Wood, H.	2291	Toole, J.
5239	Pte. Fields, C.	5270	Strachan, W. S.
2830	Smith, D.	954	Cooke, G.
5310	Prout, E.	1630	Sgt. Fleming, J. W.
2796	Lamb, H.	2717	Pte. Brierley, J.
3628	Podmore, J.	2380	Fennell, G.
4821	L.-Cpl. Emms, H. G.	3460	Gardner, H.
3290	Pte. Hope, J.	2179	Smith, J.
2357	Evans, A.	2401	Sgt. Connole, J.
4022	L.-Cpl. Knox, W.	3257	Pte. Hatchell, J.
4975	Pte. Warden, W.	2391	Judson, J.
2143	Gillbank, A.	2628	O'Brien, J.
2868	Jacques, G.	3365	Hakes, E.
2597	Linley, J.	3080	Hudson, H.
5329	Sunderland, N.	5331	Dr. Watson, A.
2223	Morton, W.	4381	L.-Cpl. Noonan, D.
2803	Thomas, C.	3088	Cpl. Driver, W.
1754	Bray, T.	3410	Pte. Coleman, P.
2267	Sgt. Clare, G.	5190	Pte. Marriott, G.
5055	L.-Cpl. Swift, W.	2671	Martin, C.
2682	Pte. Payne, J.	2825	Quigley, R.
2569	Taylor, H.	3286	Hinchcliffe, E.
4775	Cpl. Clarke, W. A. E.	3351	Waite, J.
2663	Firth, D.		

*Wounded in action, Venter's Spruit, 21st January, 1900.*

784	Pte. Kelly, P.	5239	Pte. Fields, C.
5109	Wilson, T.	1204	Yates, A.
2539	Connor, J.	4289	Pedrozolli, F.
3674	Bagshaw, J.	3304	Cpl. Baxter, J.
3018	Wooster, G.	1922	Sgt. Nolen, R.

*Wounded, January 22nd, 1900.*

Reg. No.	Rank and Name.	Reg. No.	Rank and Name.
5206	Pte. Browne, A.	3272	Pte. Shirtcliffe, J. A.
1896	Blackwell, W.	Lieut. Halford	wounded in foot.
1910	Frith, G. L.		
3016	Jacques, J. H.		

*Died of Wounds.*

2830	Pte. Smith, D.	4946	Pte. O'Callaghan, V.M.
------	----------------	------	------------------------

*Wounded, January 23rd, 1900.*

3727	Pte. Nichols, F.	2802	Pte. Piper, C.
5230	Hindly, J.	5246	Keys, P.
2817	Tuffnell, F.	5601	Cpl. Coyne, J.
2926	Smith, F.	4286	Pte. Lavender, A.
2341	Tunncliffe, E.	2956	Russell, T.

*Wounded, January 24th, 1900.*

4509	Cpl. Ainsworth, H.	4783	Pte. Morris, M.
4549	Wisbey, H.	1942	Rand, G.
2459	Crossland, A. E.		
	Captain H. Armstrong (head).		

*Killed, Potgieter's Drift, February 5th, 1900.*

2722 Pte. Emery, G.

*Wounded.*

5111	Creaser, J.	4048	Lce.-Sgt. Booth, C.
5748	Lilley, J.	2545	Pte. Shaw, J. W.
2992	Connorton, W.	5025	Hobson, A. E.
2309	Martindale, W.	5313	Martin, J. F.
3077	Sgt. Allsopp, F.	1755	Cpl. Mahar, J.
2265	Pte. Genn, H.	3027	Pte. Hagan, J.
2859	Jordon, J.	3427	Mulready, B.
5684	Raby, R.	1021	C.-Sgt. Hulley, T.
3056	Cpl. Thompson, E.	2639	Pte. Cauling, G.
3677	Pte. Wilson, C.		

*Died of Wounds.*

3407	Pte. Randall, H.	3450	Pte. Short, C.
------	------------------	------	----------------

*Wounded in action, Relief of Ladysmith, February 27th, 1900.*

3438	Pte. Drury, W.	3511	Pte. Catchpole, W.
2395	Smedley, J.	2607	Snelgrove, E.
5756	Matthewman, N.	5696	May, T.
5735	Towel, J.	4944	Brierley, R.
7747	Etheridge, J.	2908	Helliwell, J. N.

## APPENDIX C

## MENTIONED IN DISPATCHES.

*From Sir C. Warren's dispatch, Feb. 1, 1900.*

Spion Kop, Jan. 16 to 25, 1900.

York and Lancaster Regiment (1st Battalion).—Lieut.-Col. W. Kirkpatrick commanding, reports with regard to action of 20th, that Lieutenant L. Brandreth, 2nd Battalion Welsh Regiment, attached, and Private W. Savage, carried a wounded man to a place of safety under a heavy fire. Col.-Sergt. J. Stewart stayed for three hours in fighting line with Lieutenant Kearsey, who was wounded, till he got him on to a stretcher. Lance-Cpl. A. Grove carried out a wounded man under a hot fire to a place of safety, he himself being wounded.

*Sir R. Buller's Recommendations.*

March 30, 1900.

York and Lancaster Regiment (1st Battalion).—Colonel Kitchenier commanding brigade, reports that Sergeant J. Millar did excellent work under his own personal observation; his gun was under heavy fire and he never slacked off or made a mistake; its coming into action on our right rendered advance possible.

Lieut.-Col. W. Kirkpatrick (commanding): Majors F. Lousada, H. Scholes; Captain T. Gresson. Lieutenant and Adjutant M. Halford; Lieutenants E. Sykes, P. Vaughan, A. H. C. Kearsey; 2nd Lieutenant J. Coke; Privates T. Salford, G. Pitchfork.

Lieut.-Col. W. Kirkpatrick has commanded during the whole period of my command, and I have always felt the utmost confidence in him; I strongly recommend him for consideration. Major (now Lieut.-Col.) E. Lousada has been promoted to another battalion, but he merits mention as an excellent second in command. Major H. Scoles, Captain M. Halford, Lieutenants H. Headlam, A. Kearsey, Col.-Sergt. F. Hulley, Qrmr.-Sergt. J. Birch. Col.-Sergt. (Sergt.-Instr.) D. Duff, 1st V.B., has set an excellent example.

*Lord Roberts's Recommendations.*

April 2, 1901.

In his dispatch dated London, April 2, 1901, Earl Roberts brings forward the names of some who have in their military capacity most prominently distinguished themselves, or whose services have come under his personal observation. Lieut.-Col. H. Plumer, York and Lancaster Regiment, was sent out on special service to Rhodesia in June, 1899, since which time he



has been constantly in the field. He raised and organized a corps of irregulars, and moved on Mafeking, and acted in conjunction with Colonel Mahon in the relief of that town. He has since been actively engaged in the Transvaal, and has consistently done good work, not only as a soldier, but as an administrator of a high order. Major S. P. Rolt, York and Lancaster Regiment. Mounted Infantry officers: Captain H. P. Thurnall; Lieutenant R. M. Heath: Col.-Sergts. W. H. Skelton, H. H. Turner.

Lord Roberts's dispatch, dated London, Sept. 4, contains a further list of Regulars and Militia who have rendered special and meritorious service:

York and Lancaster Regt.—Lieut.-Col. F. P. Lousada; Major H. S. Scholes; Capt. T. T. Gresson, M. F. Halford, F. E. Ashton; Lieuts. F. E. B. Isherwood, P. E. Vaughan, H. R. Headlam, A. H. C. Kearsey; Qrmr. and Hon. Lieut. M. J. Duggan; Qrmr.-Sergt. J. Birch; Col.-Sergts. A. Acheson, E. T. Christian, D. Duff, F. Hulley, J. Mayfield, J. Stewart; 1st Class Qrmr.-Sergt. W. Ward (A.O.C.), attached; Sergts. H. Bracken, J. Egan, T. Loftus, J. J. Randall, W. Wright; Cpls. J. Coyne, A. L. Grove, W. Hunter; Pte. W. L. Savage.

York and Lancaster Regt. (3rd Batn.).—Capt. R. B. Learoyd (attached 1st Batn.).

Lord Kitchener's Mentions, March 8th, 1901.—From Lord Kitchener's dispatch, March 8th, 1901; the promotions of N.C.O.'s and men are by the Commander-in-Chief:

York and Lancaster Regt. (1st Batn.).—Sergt. E. J. Randell; Lance-Cpl. J. W. Hunter.

*From Lord Kitchener's dispatch, dated Cape Town, June 23rd:*

Major H. N. Byass; Lieut. R. M. Heath; Lieut. E. W. Longden (Vol. Co.); Qrmr. and Hon. Lieut. J. Birch; Sergt.-Major F. Hulley; Col.-Sergt. Gilliard; Sergt. F. Carrier; Cpl. G. Hardisty; Pte. R. Moore.

## HONOURS AND PROMOTIONS.

### ORDER OF THE BATH—COMPANIONS (C.B.'s).

York and Lancaster Regt.—Lieut.-Cols. W. J. Kirkpatrick, F. P. Lousada.

### THE DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

York and Lancaster Regt.—Capt. T. T. Gresson; Lieuts. A. H. C. Kearsey, R. M. Heath (now Capt., Middlesex Regt.).

**MEDAL FOR DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT IN THE FIELD.**

Col.-Sergts. A. Acheson, F. Hulley, J. Stewart; Sergt. J. Millar; Cpl. A. L. Grove; Pte. W. L. Savage; Cpl. W. Hunter; Pte. R. Moore.

**SPECIAL PROMOTIONS.**

To be Brevet Lieut.-Col.: Major S. P. Rolt. To be Brevet Major: Capt. M. F. Halford (Nov. 29th, 1900). To be Brevet Lieut.-Col.: Major H. N. Byass (Aug. 22nd).

**APPENDIX D**

THE following Special Army Order is published for information. Ladysmith, 3rd March, 1900.

"Soldiers of Natal,—The relief of Ladysmith unites two forces, both of which have during the last few months striven with conspicuous gallantry and splendid determination to maintain the honour of their Queen and country.

"The garrison of Ladysmith have during four months held their position against any attack with complete success, and endured many privations with admirable fortitude.

"The relieving force has had to force its way through an unknown country, across an unfordable river, and over almost inaccessible heights, in the face of a fully prepared, well armed, and tenacious enemy."

\* \* \* \* \*

"Special Natal Army Order. Head Quarters, Ladysmith, 5th March, 1900.

"The General Commanding has to communicate to the troops the following telegram he has received from the Commander-in-Chief:

"Please convey to all ranks under your command my appreciation as a soldier of their splendid work at Ladysmith; they fought nobly, and deserved the success they achieved.

"Congratulate also Sir George White and those under his command for the gallant manner in which they have maintained the old fighting reputation of our army under very trying circumstances.  
(Signed) WOLSELEY."

"The General Commanding has also to inform the troops, both of the defence and relief force, that he has received congratulations for them from all parts of Cape Colony, Natal, and from most of the great towns and societies of the United Kingdom, and from Lord Curzon in the name of all India; from Lord Minto in the name of Canada; Lord Ranfurly in the name of New Zealand, and from the Governors of the Australian Colonies in the names of their peoples.

"By the exhibition of the truest courage, the courage that burns steadily as well as flashes brilliantly, it has accomplished its object, and added a glorious page to the history of the British Empire.

"Ladysmith has been held and relieved. Sailors and soldiers, Colonials and home-bred have done this, united by one desire, inspired by one patriotism. The General Commanding congratulates both forces upon the martial qualities they have shown; he thanks them for their determined efforts, and he desires to offer his sincere sympathy to the relatives and friends of those good soldiers and gallant comrades who have fallen in the fight.  
(Signed) REDVERS BULLER, General."

*Extract, Natal Army Orders df., 19/10/00.*

"I. The following Army Order is published for information: Special Army Order, South African Field Force, Army Head Quarters, Pretoria, 10th October 1900. General the Right Honourable Sir Redvers Buller, V.C., G.C.B., K.C.M.G., having relinquished the command of the Natal Field Force, and being about to return to England, the Field Marshal Commanding-in-Chief cannot allow him to leave South Africa without thanking him for the great services he has rendered to his country while in command of that Force, as well as for the ability with which he has carried on the operations while serving with the force under Lord Roberts's immediate command, which have resulted in the Eastern portion of the Transvaal.

By Order, KITCHENER OF KHARTOUM, Major-General,  
Chief of Staff."

"II. The Natal Field Force ceases to exist as a separate command from this date. In making this announcement, General Sir Redvers Buller desires to express his grateful thanks to all the officers, warrant officers, non-commissioned officers, and men of that Force, for their unvarying support and constant co-operation.

"The task set before the Natal Field Force was no small one. It has been successfully accomplished, though with the loss of many dear friends and gallant comrades, by the valour, endurance, and splendid discipline of the Troops, and the admirable organization of the lines of communication.

"To command such a force has been the greatest possible pleasure, and Sir Redvers Buller regrets deeply that he has not been able to tell each and all of them how much he has gloried in being their commander."

*Extract from Brigade Orders, Blood River, October, 1900.*  
[2nd Volunteer Company.]

"On departure of the Volunteer Coys. for England, the G.O.C. desires to place on record his appreciation of the good services they have rendered, while serving with the Regular Battalions of their Regiments in South Africa.

"Their arrival in April last was a welcome addition to the Brigade, and the cheerful and efficient manner in which they have always performed their duties has proved them reliable soldiers.

"Major-General Wynne wishes them a prosperous voyage, and a safe return to their friends and relations at home."

*Extract from Battn. Orders, York and Lancaster Hill, 10/10/00.*  
[4th Volunteer Company.]

"Orders having been received for the Volunteer Coy. attached to the Bn. to proceed to England, they will leave Wakkerstrom by the next Convoy for Volksrust, en route for P.-M.-Burg.

"In bidding 'Good Bye' on behalf of the 1st Bn. York and Lancaster Regt., to the Volunteer Company, the Commanding Officer wishes to place on record his high appreciation of the good work done by it during the present campaign.

"The conduct of the men has been exemplary, and the willingness they have shown for all sorts of hard work, combined with the cheerfulness with which they have put up with the hardships inevitable to a campaign like the present one, has been most praiseworthy.

"Their conduct under fire was very steady, and altogether the Volunteer Battalions of the York and Lancaster Regt. to which the respective half Coys. belong have every reason to be very proud of their representatives.

"The Commanding Officer is very glad to have had the Volunteer Company under his command, and he feels sure that this campaign will still further cement the kindly feeling which exists between all Battns. of the York and Lancaster Regt."

*Sub-District Order by Br.-General J. P. Burn-Murdoch.*

"Newcastle, Natal, 22/4/01.

"The Br.-General wishes to thank the Officers, Non-Coms. and men of 1st Vol. Coy. the York and Lancaster Regt. for the excellent work that they have done during the time they have been under his command.

"The safety of the section of the Newcastle Defences held by them has been well looked after. The conduct of the men has been exemplary. There has been no crime.

"He regrets very much that they are leaving his command, but congratulates them on their return to their homes and families.

(By Order) A. H. TAYLOR, Capt., D.A.A.G.

"Newcastle. Sub-District."

## APPENDIX E

THE York and Lancaster Section of the Eastern Company, 2nd Battalion Mounted Infantry, was composed as under :

Lieut. R. M. Heath. Section leader.	Pte. J. Wheatley. Subsection leader.
Sergt. W. H. Skelton. Section sergeant.	G. Revill.
Corpl. F. Owen. Section corporal.	W. Green.
L. Corpl. L. Townsend. Subsection leader.	W. Stevens.
Pte. L. Humphries. Farrier.	W. Coates. Subsection leader.
W. Eccles.	J. Lacey.
W. Crowther.	W. Turtle.
L.-Corpl. J. Naylor. Subsection leader.	W. H. Grasby.
Pte. F. Staniforth.	A. Rutt. Subsection leader.
R. Lowe.	J. Coe.
J. Lee.	G. Whincup.
H. Abbott. Subsection leader.	W. Currell.
T. Jones.	A. Keyworth. Subsection leader.
F. Yeardley.	H. Suffield.
T. Norburn.	C. Wright. Farrier.
	A. Kilner, and
	Sergt. W. Gilliard, Coy. Qrmr.-Sergt.

Thus the total strength of the section, excluding the Company Quartermaster-Sergeant, was 31.

We left York for Aldershot on Monday, 9th October, 1900, sailed from Southampton on 24th October, and disembarked at Cape Town on 19th November.

The units of which the 2nd Mounted Infantry was formed were as follows :

Northern Company, Commanded by Capt. A. H. S. Hart,  
1st E. Surrey Regiment.

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Section Officers.</i>
2nd Lincolnshire Regiment .	Lieut. R. H. Morant.
2nd Bedfordshire Regiment .	F. A. D. Stevens.
1st Yorkshire Regiment .	M. H. Tomlin.
2nd Hampshire Regiment .	F. S. Geary.

Western Company, Commanded by Capt. C. R. I. Brook, 1st Yorkshire Light Infantry.	
1st Royal Welsh Fusiliers .	2nd Lt. Hon. C. Clegg-Hill.
2nd South Wales Borderers .	Lieut. R. G. Palmer.
1st Worcester Regiment .	B. O. Richards.
2nd Wiltshire Regiment .	A. H. H. Wilson.

## Machine Gun Section.

2nd Duke of Cornwall's L.I. .	Lieut. H. Fargus.
-------------------------------	-------------------

Dublin Company, Commanded by Capt. H. de B. de Lisle,  
2nd Durham Light Infantry.

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Section Officers.</i>
1st Royal Scots . . .	Lieut. L. K. Smith.
2nd Scottish Rifles . . .	W. M. White.
2nd Dorsets . . .	C. Saunders.
1st A. and S. Highlanders . . .	G. E. Courtney.

Eastern Company, Commanded by Capt. W. Atkins,  
2nd Wilts Regiment.

2nd Leicester Regiment . . .	Lieut. B. L. Dwyer.
1st York and Lancaster Regt. . .	R. M. Heath.
1st Connaught Rangers . . .	R. P. L. Vigors.
1st Royal Dublin Fusiliers . . .	A. A. C. Taylor.

Machine Gun Section.

2nd Royal Irish Fusiliers . . . 2nd Lieut. W. Haire Forster.

## APPENDIX F

LIST of the Garrison on Wakkerstrom Hill and in the town.  
The garrison was increased at first to one and a-half, and afterwards to two companies :

<i>Officers.</i>	<i>N.C.O.'s and men.</i>
Royal Artillery. Capt. Davidson . . .	34
Mounted Infantry . . .	45
R.A.M.C. Lieut. J. H. R. Bond . . .	22
York and Lancaster Regiment (15) . . .	640
C. O. Colonel Kirkpatrick.	
Adjutant. Capt. Gresson.	
Capt. Halford, F. Coy.	
Lieuts. Bethell and Pratt.	
Capt. Haines, Lieuts. Vickerman and Harley.	H Company.
Capt. Webb, Lieut. Blunt . . .	G Company.
Lieuts. Kearsey and Corbyn . . .	A Company.
Cpts. Learoyd and Swanston . . .	D Company.
Lieut. Chalmer . . .	K Company.
Half Company (Hospital). Capt. Faichnie.	
Number of patients (variable) . . .	Average 26
District Commissioner :	
Col. Dalrymple Hay . . .	5
Totals . . .	20 772

Our total strength during our time at Wakkerstrom may be taken at 800.

There was a Mounted Infantry section under Lieut. Jeffreys (Dublin Fusiliers) and Lieut. Hyslop (Dorset Regiment).

## APPENDIX G

## List of Medical Officers at different posts.

Lieutenant Bond, R.A.M.C. attached 13th January, 1900.  
Civil Surgeon Craster at Ingogo and Volksrust.  
" " Tickle " Cork Post.  
" " Rutherford " Klip River Post.  
" " Knox " " "  
" " Macrae " Ingogo.  
" " Davidson " Cork Post and Vrede Blockhouse,  
O.R.C.

# APPENDIX H

## MEDAL ROLL OF THE 1ST BATTALION YORK AND LANCASTER REGIMENT

(C.B.) (C.B.)	RANK AND NAME.		Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lairg's Nek.	(D.S.O.)	RANK AND NAME.		Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lairg's Nek.	
	RANK AND NAME.																	
(D.S.O.)	OFFICERS																	
	Lt.-Col. Kirkpatrick, W. J.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Pte. Adams, G. H.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Lt.-Col. Lousada, F. P.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Amley, J.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Major Scholes, H. S.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Cpl. Airey, J.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Major Byass, H. N.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Pte. Alderson, C.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Capt. Hyde, A. C.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Alexander, H.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Capt. Cobbold, E. C.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Allen, N.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Armstrong, J. H.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Allen, T. D.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Haines, A. M.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Allender, F.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Webb, S. E. D.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Allender, T.		x	x	x	x	x	x	
(D.S.O.)	Bradshaw, W. E. D.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Allison, W. E.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Gresson, T. T.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Almond, R.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Thurnall, H. P.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Sgt. Alsop, F.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Major Halford, M. F.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Anes, R.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Capt. Learoyd, R. B.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Pte. Anderson, H.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Sykes, W. E.		x	x	x	x	x	x	L.-Cpl. Andrews, J. R.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Swanston, H. O.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Cpl. Antcliffe, G.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Marples, E. A. Natal.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Pte. Appleton, J.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Capron, G.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Appleyard, E.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Ashton, F. E.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Archer, J.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Lient.	Armstrong, J. S. Natal.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Armistage, S.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Revell Sutton, T.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Arnold, W.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Howlett		x	x	x	x	x	x	Arnold, J. H.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Islerwood, F. E. B.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Arthey, F.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Gardner, R. Natal.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Ascough, J. W.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Vaughan, P. E.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Ashforth, D.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Duckworth, H. W.		x	x	x	x	x	x	Ashmore, T.		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
	Headlam, H. R.		x	x	x	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
			x	x	x	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
			x	x	x	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	



[illegible]

† Paardeberg, Dreifontein, Johannesburg, Diamond Hill, Wittebergen, Relief of Kimberley.

Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lamp's Nek.	Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lamp's Nek.
5660	Pte. Barnes, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5631	Pte. Bealby, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5723	L.-Cpl. Barracough, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5386	Sgt. Bowen, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3630	L.-Cpl. Barron, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5548	Pte. Bower, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2186	Pte. Barratt, H. S.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7080	Bowen, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7016	Barratt, J. S.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4990	Bowen, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5170	Barron, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5987	Bowen, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3868	Barron, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5908	Boyd, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2833	Barron, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4388	Dr. Boyd, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3303	Barron, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4873	Pte. Bracken, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5376	Barron, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3970	Sgt. Bradbury, W. E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4763	Bates, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3400	Bradbury, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5217	Cpl. Bateston, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4863	Bradbury, W. S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4947	L.-Cpl. Battley, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3009	Bradley, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4402	Sgt. Battle, E. E.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4908	Bradley, R. W. Natal.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3071	Pte. Barry, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4941	Bradley, I.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6119	Pte. Bartye, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6159	Brady, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3304	Cpl. Baxter, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6971	Brady, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4864	Pte. Baxter, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5762	Bramhall, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5082	Cpl. Baxter, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5728	Bramhall, C. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6127	Pte. Beaden, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1762	Branwell, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4053	Cpl. Beadle, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5668	Branwell, I.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3090	L.-Cpl. Beamish, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1788	Bray, I.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2536	Pte. Beasley, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1754	Brealey, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7084	Pte. Beasley, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2717	Brenan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bandsmen	Cpl. Beaumont, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5312	Brennan, G. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2720	Cpl. Beard, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6905	Briddon, G. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2110	Pte. Beckett, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2740	Brien, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3084	Beddingham, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4944	Brierley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4878	Bedford, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6135	Brierley, J. C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
267	Bedford, W. Maleg.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2690	Pte. Briggs, T. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4407	Bedford, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5381	Pte. Briggs, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5775	Bedford, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6904	Briggs, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3671	Cpl. Beecher, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6155	Britton, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5667	Pte. Belk, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5422	Broadbent, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3031	Cpl. Bell, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7022	L.-Cpl. Broadbent, G. A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4605	Pte. Bell, C. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x								
6872	Pte. Bell, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x								
6903	L.-Cpl. Bell, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x								

2493	Pte. Bennett, J.	5757	Pte. Broadhead, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2684	Bennett, J.	6306	Broadhead, E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2734	Bennett, R. J.	5164	Broughton, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3039	Bennett, W. J.	1002	Brown, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5496	Bennett, T.	1702	Brown, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5810	Bennett, T.	2771	Brown, G.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2207	Berry, F.	4914	Brown, B.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3651	Berry, G.	5806	Brown, R.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5086	Berry, A.	5714	Brown, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4741	Biggerstaffe, S.	5729	Brown, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4794	Biggins, G.	5758	Brown, A. E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5687	Biggins, H.	6907	Brown, C. E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3665	Bandman Biggs, W. J.	7010	Brown, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3995	L. Cpl. Biggs, A. E.	3784	Cpl. Brown, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6908	Pte. Bingham, A.	5104	Sgt. Bugg, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7076	Cpl. Bini, F.	2201	Pte. Bugg, E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
191	Q. M. S. Birch, J.	4677	Bull, J. W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5625	Pte. Birch, J.	5764	Cpl. Bull, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6960	Birch, W.	2099	Pte. Bulmer, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7077	Sgt. Birch, H.	5623	Bunting, W. H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5541	Pte. Bird, E.	6893	Bunting, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7085	Bird, G.	5789	Sgt. Bunting, A. E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6054	L. Cpl. Birks, G.	6836	Pte. Burgin, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7018	Pte. Birmingham, W.	5315	Burgin, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5610	Blackburn, A.	2094	Burling, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5616	Blackburn, A.	5343	Burns, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2664	Blackburn, A.	5738	Burns, P.	..	..	..	..	..	..
1866	Blackburn, J.	3033	Bushell, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7086	Blacknell, W.	5444	Butcher, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
1084	Blagden, G.	4919	Butler, C.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2129	Sgt. Blake, E.	5821	Butler, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2788	Pte. Blow, R.	5429	Butler, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5040	Blow, T.	5590	L. Cpl. Butterfield, J. A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5636	Bolton, G.	5994	Pte. Butterworth, G.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2135	Sgt. Bolton, H.	1875	Buxton, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5053	Pte. Bond, A.	7022	Byrnes, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6164	Bonney, J.	5747	Byrnes, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2638	Boocock, H.	7075	Cain, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4048	L. Sgt. Booth, C.	6909	Sgt. Calah, M. H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5297	Pte. Booth, W.	2322	Pte. Cameron, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5822	Pte. Booth, T.	6056	Camm, C. H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6114	L. Cpl. Boothroyd, C. B.	6033	Campbell, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2845	Pte. Bottomley, R. B.	3569	Carey, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2872	Bottomley, F.	5580	Sgt. Carrier, F.	..	..	..	..	..	..
			Pte. Carr, Z.	..	..	..	..	..	..

Regl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lain's Nek.	Regl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Lain's Nek.
5666	Pte. Carr, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2469	Sgt. Copley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5703	Carr, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2432	Pte. Corbett, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5208	Carter, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5750	Corbett, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2480	Cartledge, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5226	Corcoran, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5658	Castleton, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5988	Count, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5805	Castleton, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5776	Cousins, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3311	Catchpole, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5149	Cousins, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2639	Cauling, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5716	L.-Cpl. Cowlishaw, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2806	Cavender, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5753	Pte. Cowlishaw, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5257	Cawson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2849	Coyle, D.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5588	Chadburton, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5601	Coyne, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7087	Chaffey, S. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2923	Coyne, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7023	Champoey, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5986	Pte. Coz, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5057	Chaplin, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6308	Coz, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1615	Chapman, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1725	Cragg, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6112	Chapman, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2311	L.-Cpl. Crampton, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6834	Chapman, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2282	Pte. Crampton, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5704	Chappell, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6129	Cpl. Crane, P.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4936	Chase, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5323	Pte. Crane, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5222	Chason, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7024	Cranmer, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5633	Cheekley, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7025	Crapper, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2936	Cheetham, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1996	Crashley, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5985	Cheerill, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5111	Creaser, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2447	Childs, J. E. T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5614	Creegan, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1240	Col. Sgt. Christian, E. T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3928	Creegan, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2267	Sgt. Clare, G. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4918	Pte. Crick, E. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2247	Pte. Clarke, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4185	Dr. Croft, E. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2210	Clarke, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5220	Pte. Croft, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2720	Clarke, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3229	Croft, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3085	Clarke, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1682	Croker, W. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3820	Clarke, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2694	Crookes, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4676	Clarke, W. A. E.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3951	Crookes, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4775	Cpl. Clarke, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5692	Crookes, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5242	Pte. Clarke, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5732	Crookes, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5556	Clarke, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5783	Crookes, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6032	Clarke, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6133	Cronan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6208	Clarke, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5694	Cropper, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x

6911	Clarke, A.	Natal.	6183	Cross, W.	
5910	Clayton, C. T.		2459	Crossland, A.	
5983	Clayton, W.	Natal.	3397	Crossland, W.	
4486	S. M.-Tailor	Natal.	7050	Croxford, W.	
2457	Clegg, P.		7055	Croxford, W.	
5379	Cleves, J.		5785	Crumack, F.	
5394	Cliffe, E.		5218	Cunneen, J.	
5809	Clinton, E.		5798	Cunneen, J.	
3885	Cloes, A. T.		5978	Cuthbert, J.	
6399	Clovery, T.		6913	Cuthbert, J.	
5321	Cochayne, J.		6890	Cutts, C. E.	
5749	Cockburn, G.		2590	Cutts, C. E.	
3188	Sgt. Cockburn, G.		2393	Sgt. Curran, J.	
5860	Pte. Cockburn, E.		5798	Curran, J.	
5860	Coe, G.	Natal.	5441	Curry, J.	
6843	Colbeck, G.		4122	Cpl. Dalby, C.	
2315	Coldwell, C.		5731	Pte. Dalton, J.	
6912	Coldwell, S.		2948	Daly, E.	
5354	Cole, J. G. W.		5731	Danford, W. W.	
3410	Cole, H.		2380	Darbyshire, I.	
5688	Colley, T.		3622	Darbyshire, I.	
5411	Colledge, S.		3872	Dr. Darlington, K.	
3440	Collins, C.		7089	Pte. Darlow, H. T.	
4053	Collins, J.		7086	L.-Cpl. Darren, J. T.	
2401	Sgt. Connole, H.		5622	Pte. Darrigan, W.	
6649	Pte. Connor, J.		3997	Darwent, W.	
2139	Connor, G.		6132	Davis, A. J.	Natal.
2698	Connor, I.		6871	Davis, A. J.	
6141	Connorton, I.		2399	Davis, J. T.	
2992	Conopher, I.		5314	Davis, J. T.	
6634	Cook, G.		6941	Davis, H. R.	Natal.
954	Sgt. Cook, J. W.		5249	Davis, H. R.	
1690	Pte. Cook, R. W.		4292	Davis, W.	
2317	Cook, R. W.		1185	Dawson, E.	
2390	Cook, L. W.		3597	Dawson, F.	
2621	Cooke, F.		6187	Dawson, W.	
3000	Cooke, A.		7057	Dawson, I.	
4248	Cooke, J.	Natal.	3700	Day, A. W.	
4867	Cooke, F.		6920	Daykin, W.	
6863	Cooke, J.		3366	Deakin, G.	
1243	Sgt. Croombe, A.		1011	Dean, A.	
4206	L.-Cpl. Cooper, W.		6128	Dean, J.	
5324	Pte. Cooper, O.		5801	Deighton, R. H.	
6910	Cooper, A.		5710	Deane, T.	
2200	Coope, J.				

Regd. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Living's Nek.
2181	Pte. Dellar, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1205	Dench, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6962	Denial, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2928	Depear, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7028	Depledge, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6138	Derbyshire, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6023	Devine, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5632	Dewis, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5181	Cpl. Dickens, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2378	Pte. Dickenson, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2433	Pr.-Sgt. Dickenson, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5759	Pte. Didlock, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
999	Dilger, J. A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6299	Dixon, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4962	Dodd, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4227	Dodgson, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6123	Dolan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6846	Dolphin, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2588	Donelan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1814	Donnell, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3021	Dooghan, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5603	Dooley, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2281	Downey, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6307	Downing, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4780	Dowsett, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1911	L.-Cpl. Drabble, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2194	Pte. Draper, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4942	Draper, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3088	Cpl. Driver, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3438	Pte. Drury, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1037	Duckenfield, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6170	Duckworth, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2902	Dudley, G. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2777	Col.-Sgt. Duff, D.	x	x	x	x	x	x
965	Pte. Duff, L.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4642	Dugdale, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2620	Dumont, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
Regd. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Living's Nek.
7092	Pte. Fairst, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5349	Falkingham, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3066	Farmer, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2894	Farrell, P.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3605	Farrell, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5605	Farrell, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5418	Farrell, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6195	Fawcett, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7131	Fearnley, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1601	Fennell, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2380	Fennell, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2578	Ferguson, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5473	Fields, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5239	Fields, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6121	Finnerty, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5638	Finnie, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1062	Firth, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2663	Cpl. Firth, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7932	Pte. Fish, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5679	Fisher, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6167	Fishwick, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1170	FitzGibbon, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
643	Fitzpatrick, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5676	Flaherty, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5337	Flannagan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5691	Flannagan, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5355	Fleet, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1630	Sgt. Fleming, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2041	Pte. Fletcher, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7072	Flint, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6863	Flower, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2133	Foley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7033	Foot, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6205	Ford, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2543	Foskew, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5877	Foster, D.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5707	Foster, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x

[illegible]

† Paardeberg, Dreifontein, Relief of Kimberley.

Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tregla Hights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nat.
2492	Pte. Gill, J. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5317	Gill, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5635	Gill, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7037	Gillatt, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2711	Gilmore, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1548	Gladwin, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
804	Gleadall, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5648	Gleeson, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5162	Glennon, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6071	Glossop, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6065	Glover, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6037	Glyn, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2902	L.-Cpl. Godbolt, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5659	Pte. Goddard, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5348	Godfrey, K.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5531	Gouldwin, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3350	Bandaman Good, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3350	Sgt. Good, D.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1076	Pte. Goodall, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3997	Goodall, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5210	Goodall, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2815	Goodwin, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5202	Goodwin, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4286	Goose, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5251	Gozland T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2774	Sgt. Gozzard, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2280	Pte. Grady, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6199	Graham, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2137	Granger, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2574	Grant, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3697	Grant, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5743	Grant, S. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5811	Gray, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3997	Grayson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2122	Sgt. Green, G. A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2281	Pte. Green, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2857	L.-Cpl. Greenaway, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x
Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tregla Hights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nat.
4292	Pte. Hann, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1282	Harding, T. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2707	Cpl. Hardy, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5350	Pte. Hardy, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4806	Sgt. Hare, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5595	Pte. Hargreaves, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6855	Hargreaves, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6031	Harley, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2320	Harley, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7040	Pte. Harper, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3531	Bandaman Harris, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2319	Pte. Harrison, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4706	L.-Cpl. Harrison, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4859	Pte. Harrison, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5536	Harrison, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5353	Harrison, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5446	Harrison, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5380	Harrison, A. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5721	Harrison, T. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5785	Harrison, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6016	Hart, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3936	Hart, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3273	Hart, K.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5642	Hart, K.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3310	Harley, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5189	Harley, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6117	Harley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7094	Harley, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3774	Harwood, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2146	Hatchell, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3257	Hatchell, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5709	Hawksworth, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2072	Hawley, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3330	Hawley, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4200	Hawley, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5697	Hawley, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4845	Hayes, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x





Regl. No.	RANK AND NAME	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Laird's Nek.
6976	Pte. Hinsley, H.	Natal.					
6975	Pte. Hipkins, E.	Natal.					
4441	Sgt. Hirst, C. F.						
5717	Pte. Hirst, O.						
5045	Hobson, A.						
5637	Hobson, J.						
6919	Hobson, H.	Natal.					
3854	Bandman Hockley, H.						
5724	Pte. Hodggett, T.						
5706	Hodgkinson, A.						
6940	Hodgkinson, F.						
5787	Hodgson, J.						
5711	Hodkin, A.						
5342	Hodson, W.						
5671	Hodson, J.						
4998	Loc.-Sgt. Hogg, F.						
5549	Pte. Hogg, W.						
4673	Holland, D.						
5065	Holland, J.						
5693	Hollis, J.						
2965	Hollingsworth, J.						
2219	Holmes, T.						
5674	Holroyd, A.						
4795	Holt, F.						
5746	Holt, R.						
5305	Hood, J.						
3990	Dr. Hope, J.						
4738	Pte. Hopewell, B.						
3949	Cpl. Hopkins, T.						
6859	Pte. Hopkinson, G. W.						
6860	Hopkinson, F.						
4944	Horn, T.						
5995	Hornby, E.						
3327	Horton, A.						
6316	Horton, W.						
2458	Horsefield, E.						
5971	Horsefield, G.						
Regl. No.	RANK AND NAME	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Laird's Nek.
7125	Cpl. Irwin, J. W.						
6995	Pte. Jackson, B.						
5950	L.-Cpl. Jackson, H.						
5939	Cpl. Jackson, H.						
2134	Sgt. Jackson, G.						
2155	Pte. Jackson, W.						
2314	Jackson, T.						
2384	Jackson, T.						
3408	Jackson, W.						
3482	Jackson, J.						
4685	L.-Cpl. Jackson, W.						
4737	Pte. Jackson, W.						
5567	Jackson, E.						
5662	Jackson, R.						
6664	Jackson, E.						
6897	Cpl. Jackson, J.	Natal.					
7041	Pte. Jackson, W.	Natal.					
7048	Jackson, G.						
2858	Jacques, J. H.						
3016	Jarvis, S.						
1317	Jay, S.						
2599	Jay, S.						
7043	Jayous, B.						
6203	Jenkins, T.						
5262	Jenkins, W.						
6137	Jennings, F.						
4664	Jenson, S.						
5631	Jewett, W.						
861	Jewett, W.						
6124	Jewett, W.						
1289	Jewett, E.						
3089	Jinks, J.						
3895	John, S.						
3086	John, S.						
5933	Johnson, A.						
6122	Johnson, H.						
6122	Johnson, J.						

[illegible]

Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nek. Ling's	Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nek. Ling's
6896	Lieut. Sgt. Kibber, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7044	L-Cpl. Lowe, G. B.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2075	Pte. King, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7097	Pte. Lowe, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5099	King, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3009	Lovings, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5127	King, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5804	Lovine, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6001	Kinsella, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1056	Lovry, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5158	Kirby, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2897	Lovatt, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6201	L-Cpl. Kirby, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6885	Lovatt, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3037	Pte. Kirk, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1022	Lovett, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5461	Kirk, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2278	Ludden, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4978	Kirkbright, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5869	Ludlam, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2376	Kitching, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5530	L-Cpl. Macaulay, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2983	Kitchin, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4119	Machin, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3415	Sgt. Kitson, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2085	Pte. Madden, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2907	Pte. Knatesay, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6125	Pte. Madden, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4486	Knatesay, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2931	Pte. Magee, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6079	Knatesay, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1755	Cpl. Mahar, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6058	Kneale, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1961	Pte. Mahar, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4022	L-Cpl. Knox, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2966	Mahoney, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3737	Pte. Koerner, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5356	Cpl. Mahoney, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4830	Ladkin, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1367	Pte. Malcolm, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2796	Lamb, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5980	Cpl. Mallett, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5817	Lambert, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3073	Cpl. Mallin, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2837	Landy, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2795	Mallender, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6832	Langfield, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5700	Maloney, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5283	Larkman, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6842	Maltby, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7130	Latham, G. L.	x	x	x	x	x	x	1118	Mann, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3414	Launders, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5773	Manzell, M.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3598	Launt, O.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7126	Markham, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3060	Lavender, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5585	Marples, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4268	Lavender, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6866	Marr, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5786	Law, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5190	Marriott, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6841	Law, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6209	Marriott, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5599	Laxton, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2248	Marsh, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1774	Lay, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2555	Marsh, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5675	Lazenby, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2800	Marsh, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
873	Leach, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5715	Marsh, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5339	Leach, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5781	Marsh, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x

Natal.

Natal.

Natal.

5596	Leam, J.	1798	Marshall, J. W. Natal.
5597	L. Cpl. Leason, W.	2677	Marshall, A.
5598	L. Cpl. Ledger, H. H.	4595	Marshall, J. F.
5599	Pte. Ledger, J. H.	6069	Marshall, W.
5600	Lee, A.	2237	Marshall, W.
5601	Lee, A.	5756	Mathewman, E. W.
5602	Lee, S.	2809	Mathewman, E. W.
5603	Lee, J. W.	5790	Mathews, A.
5604	Lee, D.	6927	Mathews, H.
5605	Lee, F.	2671	Mathews, F. W.
5606	Lee, C.	6040	Martin, C.
5607	Lee, C.	2309	Martin, J.
5608	Lee, J.	2261	Martindale, W.
5609	Leek, H.	3601	Mason, C.
5610	Leeming, T.	5620	Mason, J.
5611	Leeson, J.	7099	Mason, J.
5612	Leeson, J.	6186	Masterson, J.
5613	Leonard, M.	4266	Maundrell, L.
5614	Leonard, M.	4931	May, W.
5615	Lester, J.	5771	May, T.
5616	Lester, J.	7098	May, J. B.
5617	Lewis, J.	845	May, J. B.
5618	Lewis, J.	3787	Mayfield, J.
5619	Lewis, J.	5893	Mayfield, T.
5620	Lewis, J.	3684	Mayfield, T.
5621	Lewis, J.	2888	Mayfield, T.
5622	Lewis, J.	2107	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5623	Lewis, J.	2274	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5624	Lewis, J.	5740	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5625	Lewis, J.	7131	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5626	Lewis, J.	2000	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5627	Lewis, J.	4451	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5628	Lewis, J.	2116	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5629	Lewis, J.	1115	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5630	Lewis, J.	3847	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5631	Lewis, J.	5672	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5632	Lewis, J.	6041	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5633	Lewis, J.	6928	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5634	Lewis, J.	1340	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5635	Lewis, J.	5214	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5636	Lewis, J.	6060	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5637	Lewis, J.	4928	McCarthy, C. Natal.
5638	Lewis, J.		
5639	Lewis, J.		
5640	Lewis, J.		
5641	Lewis, J.		
5642	Lewis, J.		
5643	Lewis, J.		
5644	Lewis, J.		
5645	Lewis, J.		
5646	Lewis, J.		
5647	Lewis, J.		
5648	Lewis, J.		
5649	Lewis, J.		
5650	Lewis, J.		
5651	Lewis, J.		
5652	Lewis, J.		
5653	Lewis, J.		
5654	Lewis, J.		
5655	Lewis, J.		
5656	Lewis, J.		
5657	Lewis, J.		
5658	Lewis, J.		
5659	Lewis, J.		
5660	Lewis, J.		
5661	Lewis, J.		
5662	Lewis, J.		
5663	Lewis, J.		
5664	Lewis, J.		
5665	Lewis, J.		
5666	Lewis, J.		
5667	Lewis, J.		
5668	Lewis, J.		
5669	Lewis, J.		
5670	Lewis, J.		
5671	Lewis, J.		
5672	Lewis, J.		
5673	Lewis, J.		
5674	Lewis, J.		
5675	Lewis, J.		
5676	Lewis, J.		
5677	Lewis, J.		
5678	Lewis, J.		
5679	Lewis, J.		
5680	Lewis, J.		
5681	Lewis, J.		
5682	Lewis, J.		
5683	Lewis, J.		
5684	Lewis, J.		
5685	Lewis, J.		
5686	Lewis, J.		
5687	Lewis, J.		
5688	Lewis, J.		
5689	Lewis, J.		
5690	Lewis, J.		
5691	Lewis, J.		
5692	Lewis, J.		
5693	Lewis, J.		
5694	Lewis, J.		
5695	Lewis, J.		
5696	Lewis, J.		
5697	Lewis, J.		
5698	Lewis, J.		
5699	Lewis, J.		
5700	Lewis, J.		
5701	Lewis, J.		
5702	Lewis, J.		
5703	Lewis, J.		
5704	Lewis, J.		
5705	Lewis, J.		
5706	Lewis, J.		
5707	Lewis, J.		
5708	Lewis, J.		
5709	Lewis, J.		
5710	Lewis, J.		
5711	Lewis, J.		
5712	Lewis, J.		
5713	Lewis, J.		
5714	Lewis, J.		
5715	Lewis, J.		

Regd. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nek.	Regd. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Nek.
5730	Pte. McVenev, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2750	Pte. Newzerling, A.	x	..	..	x	x	..
811	Meakin, T.	x	..	..	x	x	x	1113	Newby, J. W.	x	..	..	x	x	..
5846	Mellor, J.	x	..	..	x	x	x	3011	Newett, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5818	Merrin, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2434	Newsome, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
822	Merrifield, W.	x	x	..	x	x	x	2798	Newton, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5151	L. Cpl. Merrifield, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6157	Nightingale, J.	x	..	..	x	x	..
5218	Pte. Merrills, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3727	Nichols, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2471	Middleton, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4938	Nichols, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4745	Middleton, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5320	Nicholls, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5402	Middleditch, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4024	Nicholson, E.	x	..	..	x	x	..
5237	Midgley, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6193	Nicholson, E.	x	..	..	x	x	..
7123	Midgley, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4778	Nicholson, E.	x	..	..	x	x	..
744	Miles, J.	x	x	x	..	..	x	1922	Nobbs, T. W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3025	Millan, W.	x	x	x	..	..	x	4381	Sgt. Noonan, D.	x	..	..	x	x	..
1543	Col. Sgt. Miller, J. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	7073	Pte. Norburn, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2285	Pte. Miller, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4355	Sgt. Norgate, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1689	Col. Sgt. Millgate, E.	x	x	..	x	x	x	2784	Pte. Norman, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2624	Pte. Mills, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6930	North, A. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5396	Mills, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6932	North, C. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5457	Mills, P.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2748	Norton, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6162	L. Cpl. Mills, S. T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3746	Norton, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2533	Pte. Milner, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5285	Norton, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2615	Sgt. Milnes, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2633	Norton, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6108	Pte. Minihan, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5792	Oakley, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2807	Mitchell, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6118	Oates, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3020	Mitchell, A. J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2628	O'Brien, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5982	Mitchell, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5808	O'Brien, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5994	Mitchell, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6933	O'Brien, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6113	Cpl. Mitchell, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x	4946	O'Callaghan, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7067	Pte. Moffatt, J. D.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5993	Ogden, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5696	Moles, J. T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	5043	Ogden, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2770	Monk, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2898	O'Halloran, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6153	Cpl. Montgomery, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x	3958	Oldham, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2397	Pte. Mooney, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x	6043	O'Neill, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1670	Moore, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2454	Orange, H.	..	x	x	x	x	..
6239	Moore, R.	x	x	x	x	x	x	2629	Osborn, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7128	Moore, H.	x	x	x	..	..	..	2693	Osborne, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x

[illegible]

Regd. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Hights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Laing's Nek.
834	Pte. Sharkey, C.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2801	Sharkey, M.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2593	Shaughnessy, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2626	Shaughnessy, P.	X	X	X	X	X	X
1123	Shaw, J. W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2545	Shaw, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6130	Shea, R.	X	X	X	X	X	X
7050	Shepherd, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
4395	Shepherd, B.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5823	L.-Cpl. Shepherd, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2664	Pte. Shields, F.	X	X	X	X	X	X
1094	Shillito, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2721	Shillito, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5364	Shipman, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
3372	Shircliffe, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2863	Shircliffe, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
951	Cpl. Shoemith, A.	X	X	X	X	X	X
3215	Dr.-Major Short, J. W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
3450	L.-Cpl. Short, R.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5101	Pte. Short, C.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5163	Siddall, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2277	Siddall, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
618	Simcock, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6938	L.-Cpl. Simcock, F.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6992	Pte. Simmonds, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
4979	Pte. Simmonds, H.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5444	Simpson, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6994	Simpson, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
7110	Simpson, J. W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6848	Sinclair, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2984	Sinclair, R.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5448	Pte. Sison, A.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6993	Stelton, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5688	Stelton, A.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6940	Skinner, S.	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Slack, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
7064	Pte. Souden, J. G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
3288	Spain, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2288	Spencer, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6850	Spurr, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2302	Stacey, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5069	Stack, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5227	Cpl. Stack, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2010	Pte. Stafford, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5902	Standon, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2772	Stamforth, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5744	Stanforth, H.	X	X	X	X	X	X
4855	Staton, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5591	Stead, B.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6571	Stead, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
3275	Steedman, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
979	L.-Sgt. Steele, H.	X	X	X	X	X	X
473	Pte. Stenton, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
1668	Stephenson, G.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5460	L.-Cpl. Stevens, F.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5755	Pte. Stevens, M. A.	X	X	X	X	X	X
7111	Stevens, H.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2507	Stevenson, R.	X	X	X	X	X	X
2813	Stevenson, H.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6804	L.-Cpl. Stevenson, R.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6939	Pte. Stevenson, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
1059	C.-Sgt. Stewart, J. W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5190	Pte. Stewart, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5514	Stewart, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5800	Stewart, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6148	Stewart, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
4904	Stimpson, W.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5275	Stocks, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
870	Stoneham, J.	X	X	X	X	X	X
1839	Stones, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
6904	Stork, T.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5270	Stork, T. W. S.	X	X	X	X	X	X
5985	Strachan, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Strawbridge, E.	X	X	X	X	X	X



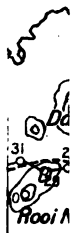
5581	Slater, J.	2571	Stringer, A.
5582	Slinn, J.	2841	Lieut.-Col. Stroud, F.
5583	Slite, E.	1116	Pte. Stubbs, S.
5584	Slynn, J.	6839	Stubbs, E.
5585	Smales, W.	6847	Stuttard, E.
5586	Smedley, J.	5309	Summerfield, J.
5587	Smedley, H.	5329	Sunderland, N.
5588	L.-Col. Smith, A.	2175	Cpl. Sutcliffe, E.
5589	Sgt. Smith, J.	4852	Dr. Sutton, J.
5590	Sgt. Smith, J.	5064	Sutton, P.
5591	Pte. Smith, J.	7052	Pte. Swain, J.
5592	Smith, W. H.	2487	Swales, C. A.
5593	Cpl. Smith, A. W.	2831	Swann, M.
5594	Pte. Smith, A.	5368	Swann, S.
5595	Smith, D.	4995	Sweeney, G. R.
5596	Smith, J.	9055	Lieut.-Col. Swift, W.
5597	Smith, F.	6304	Pte. Swift, H.
5598	Smith, F.	940	Tabor, J. T.
5599	Smith, J.	2225	Sykes, F.
5600	Smith, J.	3540	Sgt. Sykes, W.
5601	Smith, D.	1144	Pte. Taaf, A.
5602	Smith, H.	7053	Tabor, J. T.
5603	Smith, H.	2817	Tagg, J.
5604	Dr. Smith, C.	2814	Talbot, W.
5605	Pte. Smith, C.	1176	Cpl. Tate, C. R.
5606	Smith, C.	2830	Pte. Taylor, T.
5607	Smith, C.	2569	Taylor, H.
5608	Cpl. Smith, R.	2502	Taylor, H.
5609	Pte. Smith, W.	2935	Taylor, C.
5610	Smith, C.	2875	Taylor, C.
5611	Smith, J.	3315	Taylor, E.
5612	Smith, J.	5172	Taylor, E.
5613	Smith, H.	5456	Taylor, E.
5614	Smith, H.	5796	Taylor, T.
5615	Smith, G.	5991	Taylor, J.
5616	Smith, E.	6062	Taylor, A.
5617	Smith, C. A.	6876	Taylor, G.
5618	Smith, S.	6883	Taylor, F. W.
5619	Smith, W.	3520	Taylor, A.
5620	Smith, W. T. W.	5083	Telling, E. J.
5621	Smithson, P.	5701	Tew, L.
5622	Smyth, P.	1007	Thackray, J.
5623	Snelgrove, E.	2803	Thaine, H. J.
5624	Snow, W. A.		Thomas, J. H.
5625	Sgt. South, A. E.		

Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Heights.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Ling's Nek.
2521	Pte. Thompson, G. H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
3056	Cpl. Thompson, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
3313	Pte. Thompson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5200	Thompson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5378	Thompson, C.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5670	Thompson, H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5769	Thompson, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5797	Pte. Thompson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6140	Thompson, J. C.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7112	Thompson, T. T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7113	Thornley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6134	Thornley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
4359	Thornley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6303	Pte. Thornton, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6900	Thorpe, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
987	Thorpe, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5600	Thwaite, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5278	Thwaite, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
737	Tickle, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5385	Pte. Timbrell, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2961	Timons, C.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5401	Timperley, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7114	Tingle, C.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7115	Tingle, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5584	Todd, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5408	Todd, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6302	Tomlinson, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5408	Tomlinson, H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7116	Tonks, R.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5735	Tohill, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2201	Toole, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7383	Toulson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5100	Towler, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5825	Towriess, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5394	Toyne, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2453	Travis, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5526	L.-Cpl. Treadern, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6300	Pte. Trickett, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6328	Wall, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5739	Pte. Wallace, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6122	Wallbank, H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
4508	Wallington, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5267	Walters, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
3015	Bandaman Walton, R.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6123	Pte. Walsh, M.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5616	Walsh, P.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5816	Walsh, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5652	Warburton, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
1400	Cpl. Ward, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2415	Pte. Ward, H.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2815	Pte. Ward, F.	x	x	x	x	x	..
3377	Ward, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5400	Ward, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5631	Ward, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5815	Ward, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6100	Ward, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
7044	Ward, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
4075	Warden, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5915	Wardley, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6121	Wardley, J. W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2652	Wardley, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2757	L.-Cpl. Warren, E.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2927	Pte. Warren, G.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2923	Warry, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
1107	Bandaman Watson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2700	Pte. Watson, A. W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6928	Watkinson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2140	Watson, R. W. Natal.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2182	Watson, S.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2416	Watson, A.	x	x	x	x	x	..
2347	Watson, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
4955	Watson, T.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5100	Cpl. Watson, I.	x	x	x	x	x	..
5352	Dr. Watson, A.	x	x	x	x	x	..
6876	Pte. Watson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	..

5310	Trout, E.	3848	Watts, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5733	Truelove, W.	1546	Weaver, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5084	Trueman, J.	2336	Weaver, E.	..	..	..	..	..	..
902	L.-Cpl. Trutch, G.	2229	Bandman Webb, S. A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2817	Pte. Tuffnell, F.	2746	Webb, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2241	Tunncliffe, J.	4550	Pte. Webb, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2221	Turner, I.	5212	Webb, A. H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3042	Turner, J. A.	5546	Webb, G. H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4036	Sgt. Turner, H. H.	6873	Webb, J. W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4331	Pte. Turner, M.	6943	L.-Cpl. Webb, A. W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5624	Pte. Turner, J. H.	7119	Pte. Webster, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5636	Turner, A.	1035	Weekley, C.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5686	Turner, F.	6046	Weir, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5799	Turner, G.	2118	Wells, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6942	Turner, G. H.	3223	Wells, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7117	Turner, J. H.	6830	Wells, G.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5749	Turpin, T.	6297	Welsh, P.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3782	Tutlin, G.	3867	West, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4532	Twynnam, G. W.	5294	Cpl. West, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
830	Tysack, S.	5360	Pte. West, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
1356	Unsworth, J.	6075	Wey, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2803	Unwin, A.	4711	Wheatley, E.†	..	..	..	..	..	..
6884	Ursell, H.	5143	Wheatley, G.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5220	Vann, A.	2171	White, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
7118	Varley, G.	5018	White, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5090	L.-Cpl. Veale, F.	5630	White, G.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4899	Cpl. Wadeson, J.	6946	White, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2676	Pte. Wadsworth, J.	2687	White, A.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4087	Wain, J.	6047	Whitehead, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5299	Waines, W.	1075	Whitehead, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5406	Waines, T.	7055	Whiteley, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5358	Wainwright, J.	6197	Whiteside, T.	..	..	..	..	..	..
3351	Waite, J.	2970	Whitmore, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
4109	Waite, J.	5330	Whittaker, C.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6874	Wake, S.	7037	Whittaker, H.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2991	Sgt. Wakefield, W.	6067	Whittington, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
1846	Pte. Walker, E.	7058	Whitworth, W.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2147	Walker, S.	2990	Wiggett, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
2790	Walker, J.	5213	Wigley, J.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5134	Walker, L.	6146	L.-Cpl. Wilcock, F.	..	..	..	..	..	..
5504	Walker, R.	2822	L.-Sgt. Wilcox, P.	..	..	..	..	..	..
6947	Pte. Walker, C.	2893		..	..	..	..	..	..
3668	Wall, C.			..	..	..	..	..	..
	Wall, W.			..	..	..	..	..	..

† Paardeberg, Dreifontein, and Relief of Kimberley.

Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Highls.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Laing's Nek.
2855	Pte. Wild, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5112	Wildgoose, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3296	Wilkinson, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5404	L-Cpl. Wilkinson, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5777	Pte. Willerton, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3869	Williams, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4593	Williams, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5226	Williams, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5306	Williams, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6051	Williams, J. H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6078	Williams, P.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7002	Williams, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2123	Williamson, E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2862	Williamson, L.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1832	Wilson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2157	Wilson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2272	Wilson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2846	L-Cpl. Wilson, K.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3506	Sgt. Wilson, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3677	L-Cpl. Wilson, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4084	Wilson, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5109	Pte. Wilson, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5776	Wilson, C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5793	Wilson, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6103	Wilson, J. F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6875	Wilson, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6944	Wilson, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7120	Wilson, W. C.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5681	Wiltshire, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5511	L-Cpl. Windle, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
Regtl. No.	RANK AND NAME.	Cape Colony.	Orange Free State.	Transvaal.	Tugela Highls.	Relief of Ladysmith.	Laing's Nek.
5856	Pte. Winter, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2665	Cpl. Winfield, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4549	Cpl. Wisbey, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5272	Pte. Wiseman, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6163	Wiseman, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5689	Wolstenholme, S.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6077	Wolstenholme, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2768	Cpl. Wood, H.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3402	Wood, I. E.	x	x	x	x	x	x
5751	Pte. Wood, B.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6301	Wood, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6879	L-Cpl. Wood, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7078	Cpl. Wood, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1591	Pte. Woodcock, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4063	Woodcock, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6852	Woodcock, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7121	Woodhouse, F.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3856	Woodward, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7122	L-Cpl. Woodward, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
6844	Pte. Wooley, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3918	Pte. Wooster, G.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7060	L-Cpl. Worth, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x
3947	Pte. Wragg, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1345	Sgt. Wright, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2641	Pte. Wright, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
4710	Wright, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
7059	Wright, W.	x	x	x	x	x	x
1394	Yates, A.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2493	York, J.	x	x	x	x	x	x
2108	Young, T.	x	x	x	x	x	x





## INDEX

- ALLEMAN'S NEK, 76; taken, 78, 79.
- BIGGARSBERG MTS., 48, 52, 59; crossing of, 63, 67.
- BLOEMFONTEIN, entry into, 49, 207, 209, 218.
- BOTHA, LOUIS, 34, 73, 88, 97, 125, 153, 173, 175, 177, 178, 179, 196, 228, 231.
- BOTHA, MANI, 164, 191, 196, 197, 198; captured, 199.
- BOTHA'S PASS, 72; taken, 75, 76, 77, 79, 83, 164, 183, 184, 188, 222, 235.
- BRADSHAW, CAPTAIN, 205, 224, 225, 226, 227.
- BRAKFONTEIN, 25; feint attack, 28.
- BUFFALO RIVER, 61; crossing of, 65, 66, 95, 117, 123, 159.
- BULLER, GENERAL SIR REDVERS, V.C., 9, 11, 23, 24, 25, 35, 36, 40, 42; relieves Ladysmith, 43, 48, 55, 59, 60, 61; enters Newcastle, 65, 67, 75, 78, 84, 90; leaves, 115, 116.
- BURN-MURDOCH, BRIGADIER-GENERAL, 33, 35, 36, 50, 96, 126.
- CHAPMAN, MAJOR, 99.
- DE WET, 153, 181, 194, 202, 211, 212, 228, 230, 233; his farm, 70, 235.
- DRAKENSBERG MTS., 48, 52, 61, 67, 73, 222.
- DURBAN, 4; arrival at, 6, 48; volunteers arrive, 50, 51; railway, 83, 199.
- HILDYARD, GENERAL, 30; commands Fifth Division, 57, 65, 68, 69; takes Botha's Pass, 75, 90, 119, 122, 163, 202.
- HLANGWANE HILL, 33, 35, 36, 38, 39.
- INGOGO, 113, 114, 116, 117, 122, 125, 126, 128, 141, 144, 156, 157, 158, 159, 164, 166, 167, 177, 184, 200.
- ITALA FORT, attacks on, 168, 169, 170, 173.
- JONONO'S KOP, 53, 55, 56, 57, 59, 85.

- KIRKPATRICK, COLONEL, 33, 35, 40, 42, 52, 55, 88, 157, 160, 161, 163, 167, 184; retires, 191.
- KITCHENER, COLONEL, 35, 40, 42, 45.
- KITCHENER, LORD, 116, 125; proclamation, 163, 164, 176, 229, 230, 232.
- KLIP RIVER, 76, 184, 186, 189, 190, 232, 233; departure from, 235, 236.
- LADYSMITH, 1, 7, 10, 13, 21, 24; relief of, 43; entry into, 44, 45, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 55, 61.
- LAING'S NEK, 60, 67, 75, 77, 78, 79, 114, 117, 200.
- LANCASHIRE FUSILIERS, 2, 12, 14; decimated, 25, 26, 41, 72, 93, 169.
- LOUSADA, MAJOR, 40, 66.
- MAJUBA, 40, 46, 117, 118.
- MOUNTED INFANTRY, 35, 89, 90, 92, 94, 96, 98, 145, 168, 169, 203, 204, 206, 208, 209, 210, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 222, 223, 224, 226, 227.
- NEWCASTLE, entry into, 65, 94, 95, 96, 105, 111, 114, 116, 117, 127, 160, 233, 235; departure from, 236.
- PIETER'S HILL, 37, 39, 40; taking of, 41.
- PLATRAN, O.R.C., 198.
- PLATRAN, Transvaal, arrival at, 59, 82, 84, 85, 88; Head Quarters, 90.
- PRETORIA, 83, 85, 90, 96, 201, 210, 212, 213, 214, 221, 229.
- ROBERTS, LORD, 49; at Johannesburg, 69, 83, 90; leaves, 116, 207, 211.
- ROYAL LANCASTER REGIMENT (King's Own), 2; decimated, 25, 26, 41, 46, 72, 93, 94, 96, 97, 98, 100, 169.
- ST. VINCENT, 4, 5.
- SCHOLES, MAJOR, 14, 30, 52, 56, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 98, 160, 167, 188, 235.
- SOUTH LANCASHIRES, 2, 12, 26, 40, 41, 42, 46, 72, 169.
- SPION KOP, 11, 14, 20, 21; failure, 23, 24, 25.
- SPRINGFIELD, 9, 12, 18, 30, 33, 34, 36, 50.
- STANDERTON, 81; leave, 84; railway-line, 90, 162, 220, 221, 222, 235.
- TUGELA RIVER, 12; first crossing of, 13; re-crossing, 22, 24, 28, 30, 33, 36; third crossing, 37, 39.
- UTRECHT, 66, 68; surrender



- of, 69, 94, 95, '96, 97, 98;  
attack on, 99, 104; good-  
bye to, 105, 129, 130.
- VAAL KRANTZ, 24, 25; evacu-  
ated, 29, 30, 32.
- VAAL RIVER, 81, 210, 212,  
215.
- VENTER'S SPRUIT, 13, 22, 124.
- VERTUE, CAPTAIN, 6; death  
of, 21.
- VOLKSRUST, 78, 81; railway-  
line, 90, 106, 110, 111, 112,  
113, 114, 122, 143, 144,  
145, 156, 157, 161; refugee  
camp, 162; signalling, 163,  
166, 167, 168, 177, 179,  
180, 183, 220.
- VOLUNTEER COMPANY, 88,  
111, 112, 158, 159, 234.
- VREDE, 164, 183, 192, 196,  
198, 221, 231, 233.
- WAKKERSTROM, 81; occupied,  
90, 98, 104, 106, 107, 109,  
110; town, 111, 112, 113,  
115, 145, 146, 156, 177,  
179, 202, 233.
- WALLERSTEIN, LIEUT.-COL.  
takes over command, 190.
- WARREN, GENERAL SIR  
CHARLES, 2; meets the  
troops, 6, 9, 12, 15, 19, 25,  
42, 48; leaves, 57.
- WHITE, SIR GEORGE, 44, 45.
- WOODGATE, GENERAL, 2, 20;  
wounded, 21, 25; death of,  
49.
- WYNNE, GENERAL, 25, 28, 35,  
64, 85, 88.



## HISTORICAL AND MILITARY PUBLICATIONS

**THE LIFE OF NAPOLEON I.** Including New Materials from the British Official Records. By John Holland Rose, Litt. D. With many Maps and Plans and numerous Illustrations from Contemporary Paintings, Rare Prints and Engravings, Medals, etc.; also a Facsimile Letter of Napoleon. *Third edition.* 2 vols. Large post 8vo. 18s. net.

"There is no single book on Napoleon, either in English or French, to be compared to this for accuracy, for information, for judgment, nor is there any that is better reading."—Professor York Powell in the *Manchester Guardian*.

**CARLYLE'S FRENCH REVOLUTION.** Edited, with Introduction, Notes and Appendices, by John Holland Rose, Litt. D. With numerous Illustrations and Portraits from Contemporary Portraits and Engravings. In 3 vols. Large post 8vo. 21s. net.

"In all ways this is the edition in which both the student and the general reader will henceforth read Carlyle with most profit."—*Outlook*.

"The fresh notes are mainly and naturally based on information new since the days when Carlyle wrote. The appendices are in every case well found and valuable to the student. . . . An excellent feature of this admirable edition is the profusion of photographic reproductions from those 'tableaux historiques' which provided Carlyle with so many details in his descriptions of scenes in the revolutionary tragedy."—*Morning Post*.

**ACHIEVEMENTS OF CAVALRY.** With a Chapter on Mounted Infantry. By General Sir Evelyn Wood, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.M.G., Adjutant-General. With Maps and Plans, and a Portrait of General von Bredow. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

**THE WAR OF THE SUCCESSION IN SPAIN DURING THE REIGN OF QUEEN ANNE, 1702-1711.** Based on Original Manuscripts and Contemporary Records. By Col. the Hon. Arthur Parnell, R.E. With Map, etc. Demy 8vo. 14s.

**WATERLOO: THE DOWNFALL OF THE FIRST NAPOLEON:** a History of the Campaign of 1815. By George Hooper, Author of "Wellington," "The Italian Campaigns of General Bonaparte," etc. With Maps and Plans. *New edition.*

**THE CAMPAIGN OF SEDAN:** The Downfall of the Second Empire, August-September, 1870. By George Hooper. With General Map and Six Plans of Battles. *New edition.*

"This is an admirable history."—*Spectator*.

"His picture of movements and events is admirably clear, and the work can be recommended as a text-book for military students."—*Standard*.

**MY DIOCESE DURING THE WAR.** Being Extracts from the Diary of the Right Rev. A. H. Baynes, late Bishop of Natal. With numerous Illustrations. *Second impression.* Crown 8vo. 6s.

LONDON: GEORGE BELL AND SONS

7

